



ASTON MARTIN

***RAPIDES***

## Aston Martin Owner's Club

### An invitation to join the Aston Martin Owner's Club

The sporting spirit of the 1930s exists today in one of the world's most exclusive car clubs. Enthusiasts in nearly 60 countries are united by an interest in iconic cars with an enviable pedigree. Enjoy the company of like-minded owners in a wide range of activities: social evenings, weekends away or motoring tours. Something more competitive? AMOC Concours are a benchmark for connoisseurs of fine motorcars. A need for speed? We organise track days, sprints and hill climbs as well as circuit racing in venues such as Silverstone, Goodwood and Lime Rock in the USA.



The Aston Martin Owners Club  
Drayton St. Leonard,  
Wallingford,  
Oxford,  
England,  
OX10 7BG

Telephone: +44 (0) 1865 400 400

Facsimile: +44 (0) 1865 400 200

E-Mail: [hqstaff@amoc.org](mailto:hqstaff@amoc.org)

Website: [www.amoc.org](http://www.amoc.org)





## Aston Martin Heritage Trust

The Aston Martin Heritage Trust is an educational charity dedicated to the preservation, promotion and enhancement of the near 100 year history of Aston Martin. Its world class collection comprising the automotive museum, substantial archive and collection of historical artefacts is housed in the magnificently restored Grade II\* listed barn in Oxfordshire which it shares with the Owners Club. As a member of the Owners' Club you become a member and supporter of the Trust, so please log on to our web site for more information, or better still pay us a visit and see the collection for yourself.



The Aston Martin Heritage Trust  
Drayton St. Leonard,  
Wallingford,  
Oxford,  
England,  
OX10 7BG

Telephone: +44 (0) 1865 400 414

Facsimile: +44 (0) 1865 400 200

E-Mail: [secretary@amht.org.uk](mailto:secretary@amht.org.uk)

Website: [www.amht.org.uk](http://www.amht.org.uk)



|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| Introduction .....            | 1  |
| Vehicle Security .....        | 2  |
| Before Driving.....           | 3  |
| Controls .....                | 4  |
| Driving.....                  | 5  |
| Climate Control.....          | 6  |
| Audio.....                    | 7  |
| Rear Seat Entertainment ..... | 8  |
| Hands-Free Phone .....        | 9  |
| Satellite Navigation .....    | 10 |
| Maintenance .....             | 11 |
| Specifications .....          | 12 |
| Service .....                 | A  |
| Aston Martin Assistance.....  | B  |
| Aston Martin Warranty .....   | C  |
| Alphabetical Index .....      | D  |

Every effort has been made to make sure that the information provided in this Owner's Guide is accurate and up-to-date. However neither the manufacturer or the Dealer, by whom this Owner's Guide is supplied, will in any circumstances be held responsible for any inaccuracy or the consequences thereof. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from Aston Martin Lagonda Limited.

The manufacturer reserves the right to vary specifications without notice in accordance with its policy of continual product improvement.

Produced by the Technical Publications Department

ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LIMITED

Banbury Road,

Gaydon,

Warwick,

CV35 0DB

England

Telephone: (+44) 01926 644300

Fax: (+44) 01926 644733

Issue 5: January 2013

Part Number: DD43-19A321-HA

# Introduction

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Welcome .....                      | 1.2 |
| Warnings, Cautions and Notes ..... | 1.3 |
| Component Location .....           | 1.3 |
| Vehicle Identification .....       | 1.4 |
| Reporting Safety Defects .....     | 1.4 |
| Health.....                        | 1.5 |
| Vehicle Provenance.....            | 1.6 |



ASTON MARTIN

**RAPIDES**

## Welcome

Welcome to your new Aston Martin Rapide S.

This Owner's Guide, along with other publications included in your literature pack, provides information which will enhance your pleasure from owning and driving your Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide has been designed to explain the vehicle's operation and to make the control of its systems easy to understand and operate. All new owners are recommended to carefully study the contents of this Owner's Guide prior to driving.

This Owner's Guide forms part of the essential vehicle equipment for homologation purposes and must stay with the vehicle at all times.

To further assist the driver a location guide is located on the passenger side 'A' panel. This is a quick reference guide to show the location of the major items on the vehicle.

### Aston Martin Franchise Dealers

A full list of Aston Martin Dealers worldwide, where sales and service are provided by companies with the facilities, knowledge and factory trained personnel can be found at:

[www.astonmartin.com](http://www.astonmartin.com)

Every effort is made to make sure that the information given in the dealer list is accurate and up-to-date. However changes amongst holders of the Aston Martin franchise can occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any listed Importer or Dealer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

Dealers listed all aim to conform to Aston Martin standards of excellence in both sales and service. However, all vehicles sold as Aston Martins are required to meet local legislation requirements.

Should service be required in a country other than that in which this vehicle was originally purchased, every effort will be made to meet the owner's requirements, but the availability of certain parts may be affected by differences in vehicle and component specifications.

If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is unable to help, contact Aston Martin directly:

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited,  
Banbury Road,  
Gaydon,  
Warwick,  
CV35 0DB,  
England

Telephone: (+44) (0)1926 644300

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1926 644733

Aston Martin Dealers are independent traders, they are not the Company's Agents, and therefore have no authority to bind the Company or to enter into any financial or other commitments on the Company's behalf.

Only Aston Martin Dealers are authorised to carry out warranty work.

## Aston Martin Authorised Body Repairers

A full list of Aston Martin Authorised Body Repairers worldwide can be found at:

[www.astonmartin.com](http://www.astonmartin.com)

All Aston Martin Approved Body Repair centres have been assessed and audited to Aston Martin Body Repair Centre standards in either Category A or B.

**Category A:** Repairs to the bonded aluminium structure and all paint related and light structural damage.

**Category B:** All paint related and light structural damage.

Every effort is made to make sure that the information given in the Aston Martin Authorised Body Repairers list is accurate and up-to-date. However changes can occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any Aston Martin Authorised Body Repairer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

## Warnings, Cautions and Notes

The following Warnings, Cautions and Notes are used within this Owner's Guide to call your attention to specific types of information.

### Warnings

**⚠ Warning:** *Provided to show procedures which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.*

### Cautions

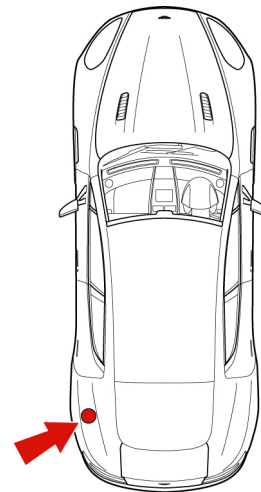
**⚠** *Provided to show procedures which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to your vehicle.*

### Notes

**📖** *Provided to show procedures which will help to avoid difficulties in the operation of your vehicle.*

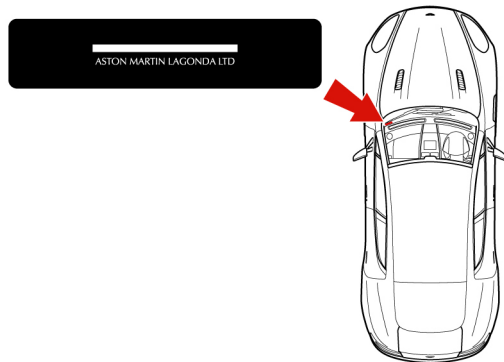
## Component Location

All directions for locating components are described as viewed from the driver's seat, i.e. the fuel filler flap shown on this diagram will be described as 'located at the rear left side of the vehicle'.

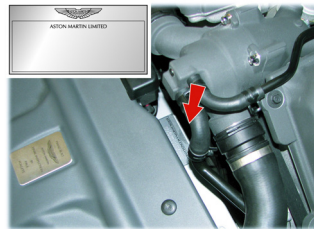


## Vehicle Identification

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is shown in the left side bottom corner of the windscreen.



The VIN Plate, attached to the front subframe behind the engine bay front cross member (viewed from above), is model and market dependent:



The VIN is also stamped into the floorpan in the right side footwell.

 *To view the VIN stamped into the floorpan lift the carpet up, from the front, and then lift the sound deadening material.*

## Reporting Safety Defects

### North America

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc., 9920 Irvine Center Drive, Irvine, CA 92618, USA.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot-line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

## Health

### Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying your Aston Martin Dealer. To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510

### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65

**⚠ Warning: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**

### Perchlorate Material

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt pre-tensioners and roll over protection devices may contain Perchlorate Material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. Go to [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate) for more information.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot-line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

Vehicle Provenance

|                                |                |                |
|--------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Model:                         | First Owner:   | Third Owner:   |
| Body Colour:                   | Selling Dealer | Selling Dealer |
| Interior Colour:               |                |                |
| Fascia Colour:                 | Delivery Date  | Delivery Date  |
| Vehicle Identification Number: |                |                |
| As on the VIN plate            |                |                |
|                                | Second Owner:  | Fourth Owner:  |
|                                | Selling Dealer | Selling Dealer |
|                                |                |                |
|                                | Delivery Date  | Delivery Date  |



---

**Fifth Owner:**

---

Selling Dealer

---

---

Delivery Date

---

---

**Sixth Owner:**

---

Selling Dealer

---

---

Delivery Date

---



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Vehicle Security

|                             |     |                                 |      |
|-----------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|------|
| Introduction .....          | 2.2 | Automatic Lock .....            | 2.9  |
| Emotion Control Unit .....  | 2.2 | Approach Light .....            | 2.10 |
| Emergency Key .....         | 2.3 | Homesafe .....                  | 2.10 |
| Unlocking and Opening ..... | 2.4 | Alarm .....                     | 2.10 |
| Locking .....               | 2.5 | Reduced Guard .....             | 2.11 |
| Master Locks .....          | 2.6 | Passive Anti-Theft System ..... | 2.12 |
| Boot Lid .....              | 2.7 | Garage Door Opener .....        | 2.13 |
| Deadlocking .....           | 2.9 | Personalisation .....           | 2.16 |

## Introduction

This vehicle is protected by electronic security system which includes:

- Remote arm and disarm
- Perimeter sensing
- Remote door, boot lid, fuel flap release lock and unlock
- Guard reduction mode
- Alarm siren with battery backup<sup>1</sup>
- Random code encryption to prevent electronic scanning or grabbing of the vehicle key identity code
- Interior movement sensor<sup>2</sup>
- Tilt Sensor<sup>2</sup>.

Vehicle protection is enhanced by a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) which provides engine immobilisation if the wrong vehicle key is used.

When the security system is armed, any attempt to forcibly open a door, the boot lid or the bonnet will result in full alarm operation.

## Garage Door Opener

As a security precaution make sure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle (Refer to 'Garage Door Opener', page 2.13).

## Emotion Control Unit

The vehicle is supplied with three vehicle keys<sup>3</sup> (Emotion Control Units), a glass key, a spare key and an emergency key.



Keep the spare key in a safe place. Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.

 If a vehicle key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

** FCC Warning: 'Note' - Changes not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

<sup>1</sup>. Markets where audible sirens are permitted.

<sup>2</sup>. Option.

<sup>3</sup>. Manufactured by  STRATTEC. 8D33-70290-BG.

## FCC - Radio Frequency Devices

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Vehicle Key Security Functions

**[1] LOCK:** Press and release for one step vehicle locking and to arm the security system. The vehicle will deadlock after 25 seconds.

(Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.9)

**[2] UNLOCK:** Press and release to unlock the driver's door only. Press and release twice, within three seconds, to unlock all doors.

Press and hold to lower the door windows at the same time.

(Refer to 'Unlocking and Opening', page 2.4)

(Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.4)

**[3] BOOT OPEN:** Press once to release the boot lid catch (Refer to 'Boot Lid', page 2.7).

**[4] APPROACH LIGHT:** Press to set the front, rear side and interior lamps to ON (Refer to 'Approach Light', page 2.10).



## Emergency Key

In the unlikely event that either the vehicle key fails to operate or the vehicle battery is fully discharged use the emergency key to lock or unlock the vehicle.

Insert the emergency key in the door lock and turn fully towards the front of the vehicle, then release, to centrally lock the vehicle, disable the boot lid and fuel flap release switches. The security system will not arm.

To centrally unlock the vehicle, enable the boot lid and fuel flap release switches, turn fully towards the rear of the vehicle, then release. If the security system was armed, the alarm will start.

To stop the alarm insert the vehicle key (even if the vehicle key has lost all power) into the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).

 *If the vehicle battery is fully discharged the emergency key will only lock or unlock a door.*



## Unlocking and Opening

 Even if the vehicle key has lost all power it will start the engine if required.

 *Memory seats: The front seats and door rear view mirrors will not move to a preset position if the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key.*

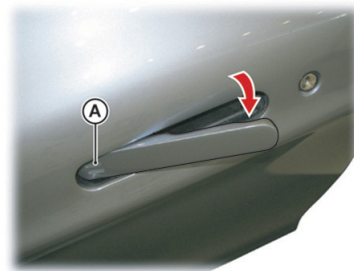
 *If the emergency key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.*

Stand within 16ft of the vehicle, point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the **UNLOCK** button once to unlock the drivers door and disarm the security system (the direction indicators will flash twice). Press twice to unlock the passenger door and enable the trunk lid catch and fuel flap release button.

Push at point A and grab the emerging door release. Pull the door release to open the door.

If a door is opened while driving a warning sound will be heard until the door is closed.

 *If preferred you can unlock all doors and enable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches with one press of the button (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).*



 *For ease of use at night white LEDs are incorporated into the door handles. An LED will come ON in the door handles when the vehicle is unlocked. A door LED will go OFF once the door is opened. If a door is not opened the LEDs will go OFF after two minutes.*

 *If the vehicle has been opened using the spare key and the driver seat or door rear view mirrors have been adjusted, the seat and door rear view mirrors will move to the positions memorised by the key which is being used (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.4).*

 *As the vehicle is unlocked, the interior lamps will come ON for five minutes. The lamps will go OFF 30 seconds after doors are closed or when the vehicle is started.*

 *If the door is left open the door puddle lamp will go OFF after eight minutes.*

## Unlocking From Inside the Vehicle

 **If reduced guard was not set to ON before locking the vehicle, deadlocking, interior movement and tilt sensors<sub>1</sub> are enabled. Passengers will not be able to unlock a door from the inside.**

If reduced guard or automatic lock was set to ON before the vehicle was locked, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

(Refer to 'Automatic Lock', page 2.9).

(Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.11).

Vehicle unlock from inside can be set to automatic unlock when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control. With automatic unlock ON only one pull of a door handle will open that door (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).

When opening a door from inside the vehicle after reduced guard has been set to ON, the security system alarm will start. Press the **UNLOCK** button on the vehicle key to stop the alarm (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is stopped).

---

<sub>1</sub>. Option.

## Locking

 **If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be set to ON before locking. This will let a passenger open a door from inside the vehicle.**

Make sure that all the doors, the boot lid and the bonnet are closed (the vehicle will not lock if a door is left open). Stand within 5 m of the vehicle, point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the **LOCK** button once to lock the doors, disable the boot lid and fuel flap release switches and arm the security system. The direction indicators will flash once as the security system is armed (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).

The driver's seat and both door rear view mirror positions are memorised and will be recalled the next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key.

 *The security system will arm and the doors will deadlock after 25 seconds.*

 *If the vehicle is locked with the boot lid open, the vehicle will lock and arm but deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors<sub>2</sub> will not operate. Close the boot lid to arm the complete security system.*

---

<sub>2</sub>. Option.

## Automatic Re-locking

If the vehicle is locked and then unlocked but a door or the boot lid is not opened within two minutes, the vehicle will automatically lock and arm again.

## Master Locks

All doors, fuel flap and boot lid release switches may be locked and unlocked by using the front master lock switch (A). Press the switch to lock. Press again to unlock.

If the vehicle is locked using the master lock switch, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

The master lock switch will operate for seven minutes after the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition control, if the vehicle is not locked using the vehicle key.

The master lock switch will not operate if the vehicle has been locked from the outside.

Operation of the master lock switch will override automatic lock (Refer to 'Automatic Lock', page 2.9).



 When the vehicle is unlocked using the master lock switch the LED in each door handle will come ON (for 10 seconds or until the door is opened). This may aid access for passengers at night time.

 In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

## Rear Passenger Door Lock

The rear doors can be centrally locked independently from the master lock switch. Press the rear lock switch (B) to lock the rear doors.

If the rear doors are locked using the rear lock switch, one pull of a door handle will unlock that door, a second pull of a door handle will open that door. The rear lock switch will operate for seven minutes after the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition control, if the vehicle is not locked using the vehicle key.

 In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.





## Child Locks



Press **MENU** (C). Navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Lock settings...> Enter <Child lock enabled>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between child locks ON and OFF.

 In the event of a vehicle accident the rear doors will automatically unlock.

## Boot Lid

### To Open the Boot Lid

Press the **BOOT OPEN** button on the vehicle key once to release the boot lid catch. Lift the lid.



 If the vehicle is locked and armed the security system will disarm and the direction indicators will flash twice when the boot is opened. The doors will stay locked (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).

### Opening from Inside the Vehicle

Press the boot lid release switch (B).  
The boot lid catch will release.  
Lift the boot lid.



## To Close the Boot Lid

Grasp the leather pull (C) and pull the boot lid down, then push the boot lid down and make sure that its catch engages. Once the catch engages, it automatically closes. If the boot lid is slammed shut, this is overridden. Press the **LOCK** button on the vehicle key to lock the lid. The direction indicators will flash once as the security system is armed (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).



 Always make sure that the boot lid is securely closed after use. The boot interior lamps will stay ON for seven minutes if the boot lid is left partially open and the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

## Vehicle Locked - Boot Lid Open

 To use a battery conditioner the boot lid has to be left open (boot lid down but not latched).

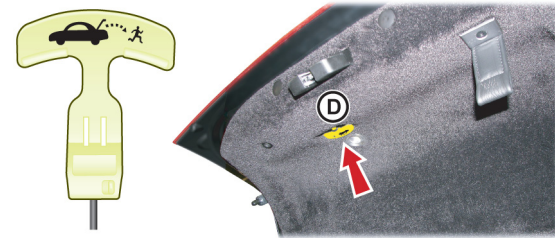
If the vehicle is locked while the boot lid is open, the vehicle will lock and arm (deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors<sup>1</sup> will not operate). If the boot lid is then closed (latched) deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors will operate and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

## Boot Lid Emergency Open

The boot lid can be opened from inside the boot by pulling the luminous emergency release handle (D).



## Deadlocking

**! If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after locking, reduced guard must be ON before locking.**

The vehicle will automatically deadlock after 25 seconds after arming the security system. When the vehicle is deadlocked, the doors cannot be opened from the inside by pulling the interior door handle. To open the doors use the vehicle key.

## Automatic Lock

When automatic lock is set to ON the doors and the boot lid will automatically lock as vehicle speed reaches 7 km/h. This function prevents unwanted access to the vehicle when stopped at traffic lights, etc.

Press **MENU** (A). Navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Lock settings...> Enter <Automatic settings...>. Select <Doors auto lock> or <Doors auto unlock on key out>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF.

Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.



**<Doors auto lock>:** Set to ON: Doors and the boot lid automatically lock when the vehicle moves off. Set to OFF: Doors and the boot lid will not lock when the vehicle moves off.

**<Doors auto unlock on key out>:** Set to ON: The front doors and the boot lid automatically unlock when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control. Set to OFF: One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock all doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

Automatic lock is factory set to ON (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).

In the event of a vehicle accident all doors will automatically unlock.

## Approach Light

When approaching the vehicle the side and interior lamps can be set to ON by pressing the **APPROACH LIGHT** button on the vehicle key. The time that the lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).

## Homesafe

When exiting the vehicle and the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition control, flash the main beam (pull the left side stalk up and release without latching) to set homesafe ON. The main beam and rear lamps will then stay ON for a determined amount of time and then go OFF. The time that the main beam and rear lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.16).

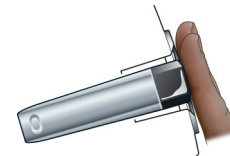
## Alarm

When the alarm has started a siren will be heard for a 25 seconds cycle (ten cycles maximum) and the direction indicators flash for five minutes after which the security system returns to the armed state. The doors and boot lid will stay locked throughout.

 *Markets where visible alarm signals and audible sirens are permitted.*

Stop the alarm at any time by pressing the **UNLOCK** button on the vehicle key or by inserting the vehicle key into the ignition control (position 'II'). There is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is stopped).

 *Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.*



## Reduced Guard

### Interior Movement Sensor

Option

When the vehicle is locked and armed the interior movement sensor will sense movement inside the vehicle. If movement is detected it will start the alarm.

### Tilt Sensor

Option

When the vehicle is locked and armed the tilt sensor will sense if the vehicle is tilted, for example, if the vehicle is being raised on a jack. If vehicle tilt is detected it will start the alarm.

**⚠ Warning:** *If a passenger is to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be set to ON before locking. In an emergency this will let a passenger open a door from inside the vehicle.*

When reduced guard is ON deadlocking, interior movement and tilt sensors (option) are set to OFF. This will let a passenger open a door from the inside by pulling the interior door handle and a passenger or animals to be left in the vehicle with the security system armed.

If a door is opened from the inside, while reduced guard is ON, the security system alarm will start. Press the **UNLOCK** button on the vehicle key to stop the alarm at any time.

Reduced guard is set by using the car settings menu. Press **MENU** (A). Navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Reduced guard...>. Select <Activate once> or <Ask on exit> and press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.



**<Ask on exit>:** Set to ON: Each time the vehicle key is moved from ignition position 'II' (ignition ON) to ignition position 'I' or '0' the message PRESS ENTER TO REDUCE GUARD. PRESS EXIT TO CANCEL will show in the message centre (right). The message will time out after one minute and reduced guard will not come ON. Set to OFF: No message will show and reduced guard will not come ON.

## Passive Anti-Theft System

<**Activate once**>: Set to ON: Reduced guard will come ON for one time. Set to ON each time reduced guard is required.

Set to OFF: Reduced guard will not come ON.

 *Reduced guard stays ON until the vehicle key is inserted in the ignition control and moved to position 'II' (ignition ON).*

The Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is a fully automatic engine immobiliser.

 *If a vehicle key is lost, a duplicate key can be created and programmed from the spare key by your Aston Martin Dealer.*

### Starting the Engine

When the security system is disarmed and the vehicle key is in the ignition control, the PATS controller sends a signal to the vehicle key. The vehicle key must respond with a valid code before engine start will be enabled. If a valid code is received, the ignition system will operate normally. If the vehicle key code is not received, or is invalid, engine start stays disabled.

### PATS Status

The PATS system state is shown by the red symbol on the instrument cluster (A).



| Ignition                                                  | Action (Valid code)                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ON                                                        | Symbol comes ON for three seconds.                                                                  |
| OFF                                                       | Symbol will flash.                                                                                  |
| OFF and the vehicle key removed from the ignition control | Symbol will flash for five minutes or one minute after the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key. |

## Fault Mode

If the status symbol continues flashing when the ignition is set to ON, the vehicle will stay immobilised.

Should this situation arise try removing and then inserting the vehicle key back to position 'II' in the ignition control. If this is unsuccessful try the spare key. If successful, get a replacement for the faulty vehicle key. If problems continue with the vehicle key, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Garage Door Opener

The garage door opener (Homelink® Universal Transceiver) operating buttons and transceiver are located in the interior rear view mirror.

The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lights, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.

 A full list of radio frequency operated devices can be either obtained via the HomeLink Hot-line or through the HomeLink compatibility list which is provided on the HomeLink website.

For information, or for assistance, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Alternatively contact Homelink directly at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or call the HomeLink Hot-line:

Toll-free: 008000 0466 354 65

or

+49 6838 907-277 (In certain countries difficulties may be experienced trying to reach the toll-free number by some providers).

** Warning: Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opening system that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opening system which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opening system without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

** Warning: When programming the transceiver to a garage door opening system, make sure that people, the vehicle and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will operate during the programming.**

 Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

 This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-vehicle transceiver.

 The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## Programming

 *Step 1 erases all programming. It only requires completing if programming Homelink for the first time or when erasing all existing programming. It does not have to be followed to program the other HomeLink buttons.*

 *The HomeLink buttons can be reprogrammed individually but not individually erased. Step 1 must be completed to erase all programming.*

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, releasing only when the HomeLink LED begins to flash after 20 seconds. All three buttons are now cleared. The HomeLink system is now in setting mode.

As a security precaution make sure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle.



2. Hold the original remote control of the device to be programmed at a distance of 10-30 cm away from the HomeLink transmitter unit keeping the LED in view all the time. The distance between the remote control and the transmitter unit depends on the system being programmed. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously push the remote control button and the desired button (1, 2 or 3).
4. The LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing LED shows successful programming of the new frequency signal.



## Operation

The vehicle should be within the operating range of the gate or garage door opener and the ignition should be ON.

The HomeLink system operates the garage door opener (or other device) in exactly the same way as the original remote control.

When you have programmed the HomeLink system, press the appropriate button 1, 2, or 3 on the control panel to operate the garage door opener.

The LED will come ON when the button on the control panel is pressed.

 *For convenience, the original remote control of the device may also be used at any time.*

In the case of a standard code, the HomeLink LED is constantly ON throughout the transmission process. For use with compatible systems, no further action is necessary.





If HomeLink now does not operate the garage door opener (or other device), this may be because the original remote control has a rolling code feature.

### Rolling Code Synchronisation

Check, by going through the following steps, whether or not the garage door opener (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code feature.

- Look in the garage door opener manual for clarification.
- The remote control apparently programs HomeLink but HomeLink does not operate the garage door opener.
- Press and hold down the programmed HomeLink button. With a rolling code system, the HomeLink LED flashes quickly for a short time and then stays ON constantly for two seconds. This pattern repeats itself for up to 20 seconds.

If HomeLink was programmed with a rolling code system, then after the end of the programming period it must be synchronised with this system again before it will function correctly.

Follow the instructions below for Rolling Code Synchronisation (the procedure will take less time with a second person to help).

The vehicle must be within operating range of the garage door opener and the ignition set to ON. Make sure you comply with the safety instructions even when synchronising the rolling code.

1. Locate the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit. Exact location and colour of the button may vary by gate or garage door opener brand (refer to the operating instructions of the garage door opener 'Training additional remote controls').
2. Press the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit (which will usually set a 'training' LED to ON).  
Following step 2, there are typically 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.
3. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Press and release the HomeLink button a second time to complete the training process. (Some garage door openers may require this procedure a third time to complete the training).

The garage door opener should now recognise the HomeLink signal and operate when the HomeLink button is pressed.

The next two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done (Refer to 'Programming', page 2.14).

### Reprogramming

If a HomeLink button has been programmed to operate a device, and you now wish to use this button to operate a different device, proceed as follows. This procedure will erase the existing programming of the respective HomeLink button.

1. Press the appropriate HomeLink button 1, 2, or 3 which requires reprogramming and keep holding it for about 20 seconds until the LED starts flashing slowly. Do not release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the LED begins to flash slowly (after approximately 20 seconds), hold the remote control of the device you wish to use approximately 10-30 cm away from the HomeLink transmitter unit - keeping the LED in view.  
The distance between the remote control and the HomeLink transmitter unit depends on the system being learned. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.
3. Now press the remote control and keep it pressed.
4. The HomeLink LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

## Personalisation

A number of security functions can be personalised.

**[1] ON/OFF:** Infotainment centre ON and OFF

**[2] SCREEN:** Shows options, menus and information.

**[3] TUNING:** Turn (left or right) to navigate in the menus.

**[4] MENU:** Opens the main menu.

**[5] ENTER:** Select in the menu or open a selection.

**[6] JOYSTICK:** Navigate in the menus.

**[7] BACK:** Navigate back in the menu or cancel a selection.

## Selection

With the vehicle key in ignition position 'I' or 'II', press **MENU** and navigate to the required setting and press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to make a selection and press **ENTER** to accept.



## Menu

### 1) Car settings...

- 1) Reduced guard...
- 1) Activate once

### 2) Ask on exit

### 2) Mirror settings...

- 1) Auto mirror fold flat enabled
- 2) Reverse mirror dip settings...
- 1) Auto
- 2) Passenger only
- 3) Passenger and driver

### 3) Lock settings...

- 1) Automatic settings...
- 1) Doors auto lock
- 2) Doors auto unlock on key out
- 2) Doors unlock...
- 1) All doors
- 2) Driver door, then all
- 3) Child lock enabled

### 4) Light settings...

- 1) Lock confirm. light
- 2) Unlock confirm. light
- 3) Approach light duration...
- 1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds
- 4) Homesafe light duration...
- 1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds

### 5) Information...

- 1) VIN number...

# Before Driving

|                                    |      |                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------|------|
| Checks Before Driving.....         | 3.2  | Front Passenger Sensing.....       | 3.15 |
| Seat Adjustment.....               | 3.2  | LATCH Anchors .....                | 3.18 |
| Temperature Controlled Seats ..... | 3.3  | Tether Anchors.....                | 3.19 |
| Seat Memory Function .....         | 3.4  | Automatic Locking Retractors ..... | 3.20 |
| Steering Wheel.....                | 3.5  | Child Seats .....                  | 3.20 |
| Interior Mirrors.....              | 3.5  | Boot Storage .....                 | 3.21 |
| Door Mirrors .....                 | 3.6  | Cabin Storage.....                 | 3.23 |
| Restraints System.....             | 3.8  | Accessory Sockets.....             | 3.24 |
| Seat Belts .....                   | 3.8  | Ashtray and Cigar Lighter.....     | 3.25 |
| Airbags.....                       | 3.12 | Electric Windows .....             | 3.25 |
| Child Safety.....                  | 3.14 | Reading Lamps.....                 | 3.27 |

## Checks Before Driving

Inspect your vehicle to make sure that everything is according to the information and specifications in this Owner's Guide.

### Outside the Vehicle:

- Visually check the road wheels, nuts and tyres.
- Check that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clear and unobstructed.
- Check that the boot lid, bonnet and fuel filler flap are securely closed.
- Check the operation of all lamps.

### Once Inside the Vehicle:

- Check that the doors are securely closed.
- Check that the seat, mirrors and steering wheel adjustments are correct.
- Check that all gauges and symbols are reading correctly.
- Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.

## Seat Adjustment

**⚠ Warning: Do not attempt to adjust the drivers seat whilst driving.**

**! The vehicle key must only be inserted into the ignition control with the two indents first, as shown. To insert the larger end first the key may damage the ignition control.**



The front seats can be adjusted while the vehicle key is in the ignition control. Gently insert the vehicle key up to position '1' (press down until the instrument cluster and infotainment centre lights come ON) and release.

They can also be adjusted:

- Up to six minutes after a door is unlocked and before the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition control.
- Up to six minutes after the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.



If the seat operation times out:

- Place the vehicle key in the ignition control.
- Close or open a door.

## Temperature Controlled Seats

The front and rear seats can be cooled<sup>1</sup> or heated. Cooled or heated air is forced through small holes in the seat base and back. Use the individual seat controls to set the seat temperature.



[A] : Front

[B] : Rear

[1] **DIAL**: Turn to raise or lower the seat temperature.

[2] **SEAT SELECT**: Press and release to select the left or right seat.

[3] **RIGHT SEAT**: When the symbol is ON use the **DIAL** to set the seat temperature.

[4] **LEFT SEAT**: When the symbol is ON use the **DIAL** to set the seat temperature.

## Operation

### Front and Rear Seats

The seats can be selected if the ignition is set to ON, but they will not operate until the engine is operating.

Press and release the **SEAT SELECT** button to select the left or right seat. The selected seat symbol will come ON.

Turn the **DIAL** clockwise to heat the seat or anticlockwise to reduce the heat. On vehicles with heated and cooled seats, turn the **DIAL** clockwise to heat and anticlockwise to cool the seat.

The selected seat LEDs show the level of heat (red LEDs) or cooling (blue LEDs). No LEDs shows that the temperature controlled seats are OFF.

Press and hold the **SEAT SELECT** button to set the temperature controlled seats to OFF (LEDs OFF). The system defaults to OFF at each ignition OFF.

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

## Seat Memory Function

**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.

**⚠ Warning:** To avoid injury, make sure that children do not play with the switches

**⚠ Warning:** If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

The position of the driver and front passenger seats can be memorised and recalled.

Three different driving position profiles can be entered in the memory. The memory position of the driver's seat also includes both door rear view mirrors.

The memory function buttons are located in the seat adjustment controls which are located each side of the centre console (A).



### Setting a Preset Position

**⚠ Warning:** Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

Adjust the seat and the door rear view mirrors to the desired position<sup>1</sup>.

- Mirror adjustment (Refer to 'Door Mirrors', page 3.6).

Push both the memory button (M) and the desired setting button (1, 2 or 3) simultaneously and release. A chime is heard and message will show in the message centre (right) to confirm<sup>2</sup>. By repeating these steps and pressing an unused button, a second and third driving position can be stored in the memory.



- <sup>1</sup>. Mirror memory operates only when adjusting the driver's seat.
- <sup>2</sup>. Driver's seat only.

**📖** When making adjustments to a set driving position, reset the new position in the same memory channel. The previous memory is erased when a new driving position is entered.

### Recalling a Memorised Position

Once in the seat press and hold button 1, 2 or 3 (depending on which position required) until all movement is stopped. The seat and door mirrors (when adjusting the driver's seat) move to the programmed position. If the button is released all movement will stop, press and hold again to continue movement.

### Memory Using the Vehicle Key

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key, the driver's seat and both door rear view mirrors will remember their positions. The next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key, the seat and door rear view mirrors will move to the memorised position once the door handle is used.

**📖** The seat and door rear view mirrors only move if they have been moved previously, i.e. the spare vehicle key has been used and the seats or mirrors have been moved.

### Emergency Stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

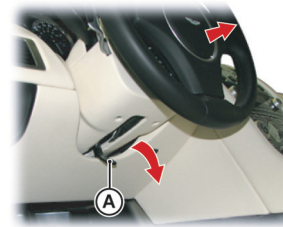
## Steering Wheel

**⚠ Warning:** *Do not adjust steering wheel whilst driving.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Make sure that the steering column is fully locked in position. The reach and tilt release lever must be fully up, in line with the steering column.*

### Reach and Tilt

The reach and tilt angle of the steering wheel are adjusted by using the release lever (A). Pull the release lever downwards and manoeuvre the steering wheel to the required position. Hold the steering wheel in the required position and lock it by pulling the release lever up.



## Interior Mirrors

### Rear View Mirror

#### Automatic Dim

Adjust the mirror on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

The rear view mirror will dim automatically if the glare from the headlamps of following vehicles becomes too bright. The mirror will return to normal view as unwanted glare reduces to an acceptable level. If the mirror is dimmed when reverse gear is selected the mirror will revert to normal view.



## Vanity Mirror

A vanity mirror is located in each sun visor.

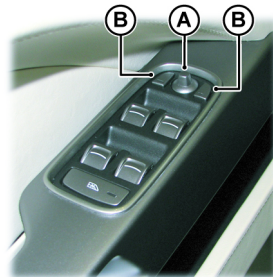


## Door Mirrors

To adjust the door mirrors select the left or right mirror (B). Then move the joystick (A) up, down, left or right to adjust the selected mirror.

 *The vehicle key must at position 'I' or 'II' in the ignition control before the door mirrors can be adjusted.*

 *An amber LED shows the selected mirror.*



## Heated Mirrors

When the heated rear window is ON the heaters in the door mirrors will operate for 6.5 minutes.

## Auto Fold Function

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key or master lock switch the mirrors will automatically fold in flat against the doors. They return to the driving position once the vehicle is unlocked.

This function can be enabled or disabled. Press **MENU** (C) and navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Mirror settings...> Enter <Auto mirror fold flat enabled>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF, then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.





**⚠** *If the vehicle has not been locked or unlocked and the mirrors have been folded using the power fold function then the mirrors will stay folded until placed in the driving position using the power fold function again.*

 *Door mirror vibration can occur if the mirrors have been moved manually (folded or unfolded), either intentionally or accidentally. To reset the linkage operate the power fold function once to fold or unfold the mirrors.*

### Power Fold Function

The power fold mirror function lets you fold or unfold the door mirror assemblies manually.

Insert the vehicle key to position 'I' or 'II' in the ignition control. Move the mirrors to the folded or unfolded position by pressing down and releasing both the left and right mirror select switches (B) together.

### Reverse Dip Function

This function gives a better view to the rear of the vehicle while reversing.

When reverse gear is selected:

**Automatic Mode:** When reverse gear is selected the door mirrors automatically move to the first preset dip position. If the mirror requires further lowering, press down and release the joystick again. If the mirror is lowered too far, press the mirror joystick up and release.

**Manual Mode:** Press down and release the mirror joystick (A). This will lower the door mirrors to preset position 1 dip. If the mirror requires further lowering, press down and release the joystick again. If the mirror is lowered too far, press the mirror joystick up and release.

In manual or automatic mode the mirrors return to driving view when reverse gear is de-selected or when either mirror button (B) is pressed.

### Reverse Dip Settings

Press **MENU** (C) and navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Mirror settings...> Enter <Reverse mirror dip settings...>. Select <Auto (reverse gear selected)>, <Passenger only> or <Passenger and driver>.

Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

**<Auto>:** If set to ON: The door mirrors dip automatically when reverse gear is selected. If set to OFF: The door mirrors stay in manual mode.

**<Passenger only>:** Only the passenger door mirror dips.

**<Passenger and driver>:** Passenger and driver door mirrors dip.

## Restraints System

The restraints system gives protection to the driver and all passengers in a variety of impact conditions. The system consists of:

- Driver and passenger safety belts with pre-tensioners and load limiting systems.
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags.
- Driver and passengers head airbags (door mounted).
- Driver and front passenger seat side airbags.
- Front Passenger Sensing.

All of these systems are controlled by a Restraints Control Module (RCM). In a collision the RCM will analyse information from various sensors, including crash and seat occupancy conditions. Based on this information the RCM will deploy the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the RCM may or may not operate the safety belt pre-tensioners and none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.

If the pre-tensioners or airbags do not operate in a collision it does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the system determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to operate these safety devices.

Front airbags are designed to operate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

### Determining if the System is Operational

A warning symbol in the instrument cluster  shows the condition of the system. A difficulty with the system is shown by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will flash or stay ON
- The warning symbol does not come ON immediately after the ignition is set to ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not operate correctly in the event of a collision.

## Seat Belts

Aston Martin strongly recommend the use of seat belts.

**⚠ Warning: Seat belts should not be worn with straps twisted.**

**⚠ Warning: Each belt assembly must only be used by one passenger; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the passengers lap. Do not put an adult seat belt around two children.**

**⚠ Warning: When installed, the seat belt webbing must not contact any sharp edges which could abrade or cut the webbing during normal use or in an accident. If necessary, the webbing must be protected.**

**⚠ Warning: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

**⚠ Warning: Wearing your seat belt is crucial to your safety. Not wearing a seat belt increases chance of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

**⚠ Warning:** Be sure that you and your passengers always fasten their seat belts and use them correctly even though airbags are provided.

**⚠ Warning:** Reclining the seat back decreases protection provided by the seat belt in the event of a crash. Adjust the seat back to an upright position. Make sure that the seat back is locked in place. Otherwise it could move forward in the event of a sudden stop or crash and cause injury.

**⚠ Warning:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**⚠ Warning:** Never place shoulder portion of belt under your arm or behind your back.

**⚠ Warning:** Always remove from your pockets rigid or breakable objects, i.e. spectacles or a mobile phone, which could be trapped under seat belts, possibly causing injury in the event of an accident.

**⚠ Warning:** Expectant mothers should seek medical advice on the most appropriate way to wear the seat belt.

**⚠ Warning:** Seat belts must be kept clean so that the retractor works correctly. Make sure that belt webbing is not twisted, looped, frayed or obstructed in any way. If in doubt about condition or operation of seat belt installation, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

**⚠ Warning:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent seat belt adjusting devices from operating, or prevent seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. Never install accessories on your seat belts.

**⚠ Warning:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**⚠ Warning:** It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the seat belt assembly is not obvious.

## Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting

All seat belts are equipped with pre-tensioner and load limiting systems.

In most moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, the front airbag and all pre-tensioner systems will deploy simultaneously.

The pre-tensioners take up slack in the seat belts as the airbags are expanding. The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the passenger's chest.

 In some moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, only the pre-tensioner system will deploy.

## Seat Belt Reminder

### Front Passengers



A warning symbol in the instrument cluster will come ON and warning sound will be heard for six seconds (approximately) when the ignition is set to ON if the driver or front passenger<sup>1</sup> seat belt is not fastened<sup>2</sup>.

An audible warning will sound. Stop the vehicle and fasten the seat belt.

### Rear Passengers

If a rear door has been opened and closed the message centre (right) will show the rear seatbelts status. The message will go OFF after 10 seconds once the vehicle has reach a speed of 7 km/h or press the **READ** button to clear the message immediately.

If a seat belt is unfastened during a journey the warning symbol and a message will show. The warning will stop once the seat belt is fastened or manually cleared by pressing the **READ** button.

## To Disable or Enable the Rear Seat Belt Reminder

- Make sure that the ignition is set to OFF (ignition position '0') and that both rear seat belts are unfastened.
- Set the ignition to ON (ignition position 'II') and within 60 seconds fasten and unfasten a rear seat belt nine times. Finish with the belt unfastened.
- The message ENABLE/DISABLE REAR SEAT BELT REMINDER? will show in the message centre (right). Within five seconds fasten and unfasten the rear seat belt once more.
- The conformation message REAR SEAT BELT REMINDER ENABLED/DISABLED will show for 30 seconds.

The warning messages are always available, press the **READ** button to view stored messages.

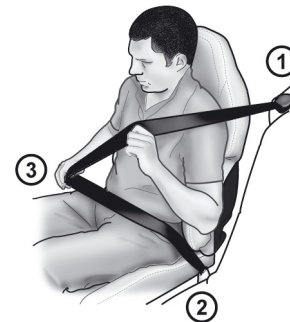
## Seat Belt Fastening



*When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.*

Each seat has three point, inertia reel seat belts installed. Items 1, 2 and 3 show the three points of the seat belt. Item 3 is also the location of the belt buckle.

The inertia belt reels will automatically tension the belts to provide security with comfort. In the event of a collision or during severe braking, the belt reels will lock.



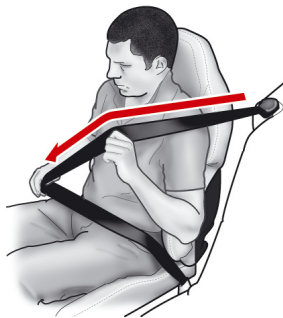
<sup>1</sup>. If a passenger is sitting in the front passenger seat.  
<sup>2</sup>. Market area dependant

Pull out the seat belt, drawing the tongue over the shoulder and across the chest.

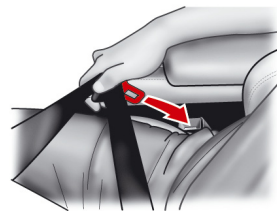
Push the tongue into the belt buckle latch until a positive click is heard.

Pull upwards on the diagonal belt to make sure that the latching is secure and to remove all slack from the belt.

Finally, double check that the lap belt is installed snugly, low down across the hips, and that there are no twists.



If it is necessary for a passenger to adjust their seat or seating position during a journey, the belt tension might be disturbed.



The passenger should therefore (as soon as it is safe to do so) gently pull down the shoulder run of the seat belt to create some slack and then immediately release it to re-tension the belt for the new seating position.



## Seat Belt Unfastening

Depress the button on the buckle. While holding the seat belt tongue allow the belt to slowly retract to its stored position.



## Child Seat Belt Fastening

**⚠ Warning: An infant or child that is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.**

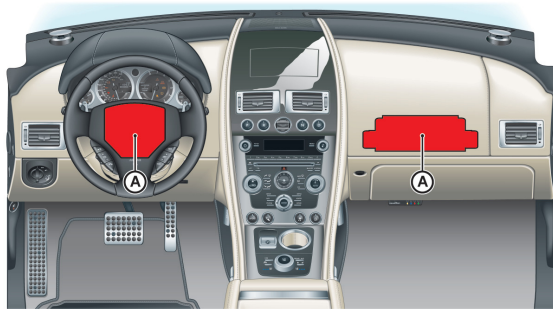
Make sure that there is no slack in the webbing and that the restraint installs correctly across the child's rib cage and hips. These are the parts of the body most able to take the force of impact.

The lap strap should pass across the top of the child's thighs, bearing on the pelvis, not on the abdominal area.

# Airbags

## Supplemental Restraints System

The vehicle is equipped with driver and passenger airbags. The airbags and seat belt pre-tensioners are electrically controlled by the restraints system.

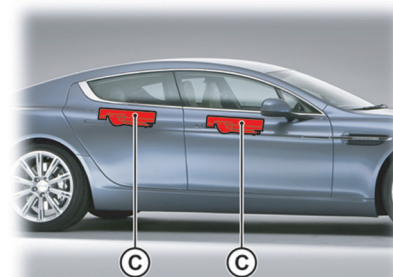


The front airbags (A) only deploy in a serious front collision. The side airbags, located in the front seats (B) and the door top panels (C) only deploy according to which side has been impacted in a serious side collision. The airbags mounted in the door top panels on each door are designed to protect the heads of the driver and passengers during certain side impacts.



The purpose of the airbags is to provide **additional** protection for the driver and passengers in the event of a serious impact (front or side impacts). The airbags are supplementary to the seat belts.

Important airbag safety labels are located on the sun visors and on the end of the instrument panel (passenger side). Make sure that the instructions on these labels are read and complied with before driving the vehicle.



## Airbag Deployment

**⚠ Warning:** *The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident. Do not use accessory seat covers.*

**⚠ Warning:** *All passengers, including the driver, should always wear seat belts, whether or not an airbag is provided, to decrease the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.*

**⚠ Warning: No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel or the front passenger fascia panel. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.**

Airbags inflate rapidly and with considerable force; there is therefore a risk of death or serious injury such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to passengers who are not correctly restrained by seat belts or are not sitting correctly when the airbags deploy. The risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim panel covering the airbag.

The whole sequence of events from sensing the impact to full inflation of the airbag takes place in a fraction of a second. The noise and gas associated with the deployment of the airbags is not injurious to health.

Do not change, modify or tamper with the steering wheel, passenger side fascia or any other part of the airbag system. Such actions could disable the system or cause inadvertent airbag deployment.

The system will not deploy in the event of minor frontal or side impacts, such as contacts when parking.

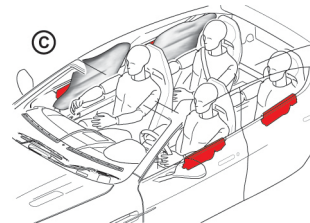
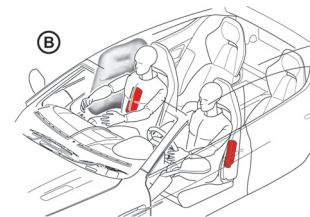
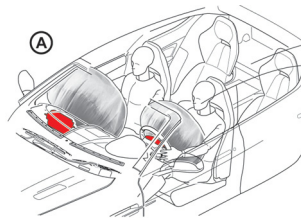
The airbag system is not designed to protect against rear impacts. All work on the airbag system must only be carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 If you are considering modifying this vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat or airbag systems, please contact Aston Martin: Customer Service Manager, Aston Martin North America, One Premier Place, Irvine, CA 92618.

**[A]** : Front airbag deployment

**[B]** : Front seat side airbag deployment

**[C]** : Door airbag deployment



## Child Safety

Aston Martin strongly recommends:

- Not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.
- That all children are seated in the rear passenger seats.
- Always use LATCH anchors where available.

A child, regardless of age, should always be restrained when travelling in a vehicle.

**⚠ Warning: Accident statistics show that children are generally safer when correctly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. A suitable child restraint, correctly installed and used, provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.**

**⚠ Warning: Do not allow children to travel in a vehicle without restraint. An appropriate child seat or harness should always be used.**

**⚠ Warning: Each seat belt assembly must be used by only one passenger. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the passengers lap.**

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that an installed child seat does not rest against the door, that the child sits correctly in the seat and does not lean close to, or against, the door or window.**

Your vehicle has the following devices for the installation of child restraints:

- Front Passenger Sensing system
- LATCH anchors<sup>1</sup>
- Passenger seats Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belts
- Tether anchor points<sup>2</sup>

- 
- <sup>1</sup>. Rear passenger seats only (2+2 seating).
  - <sup>2</sup>. Rear passenger seats only.

## Child Seats and Front Passenger Airbag

**⚠ Warning: Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by a front airbag which is set to ON.**

**⚠ Warning: Extreme Hazard: Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.**

**⚠ Warning: Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion on the front passenger seat if the airbag is set to ON.**

If a child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag **must** be set to OFF. Make sure that the child seat manufacturer's installation instructions are followed correctly.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide additional protection for the front seat occupants.



## Child Safety Locks

When the child locks are ON the rear doors can not be opened from the inside.

Press **MENU** (A) and select <Child lock enabled>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between child locks ON and OFF.

 In the event of a vehicle accident the rear doors will automatically unlock.



## Front Passenger Sensing

The front passenger sensing system is part of an advanced restraints system and gives the following, in addition to the restraints system. Front passenger sensing is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS)208 and is designed to set the front passenger's front airbag to OFF under certain conditions.

The system works with sensors which are installed in the front passenger's seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a correctly seated passenger and determine if the front passenger's front airbag should be set to ON or OFF.

 If it is necessary to modify the advanced restraints system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Aston Martin Dealer at the phone number shown in the dealer directory of this owner's guide.

Front passenger sensing will set the front passenger's front airbag to OFF if:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied
- A child is present or a child is present in a child seat which is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions
- A front passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time

If the front passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has set the passenger's front airbag to OFF, the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol (A) will come ON and stay ON to show that the front passenger front airbag is OFF.

Front passenger sensing will set the front passenger's front airbag to ON anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting correctly in the front passenger seat.



**PASS  
AIRBAG OFF**

| Passenger Seat     | Airbag | PASS AIRBAG OFF Lamp |
|--------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Empty              | OFF    | OFF                  |
| Child + child seat | OFF    | ON                   |
| Adult              | ON     | OFF                  |

 In some cases a small child placed in a child seat will not set the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol to ON. If this occurs the passenger airbag status will be as described above for an empty seat, i.e. passenger seat airbag 'OFF' and the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol OFF.

 The passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat base. For most objects which are on the passenger seat, the passenger front airbag will be set to OFF. Even though the passenger airbag is set to OFF, the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol may or may not come ON according to the table above.

 The PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol will come ON for a short period when the ignition is switched ON to confirm it is ready.

## Seating Position

 **Warning:** Always sit upright against the seat back, with your feet on the floor. If you do not sit correctly or with the seat back reclined too far this can take off weight from the seat base and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.

 **Warning:** Incorrect installation of a child seat may cause the passenger sensing system to leave the front airbag set to ON. Always make sure that child seats are correctly installed on the seat. Read the child seat manufacture's installation instructions.

 **Warning:** Even with the advanced restraints system, children aged 12 and under should be correctly restrained in the rear seats.

 **Warning:** Do not stow objects in seat back pocket, the seat base front pocket or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat.

 **Warning:** Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the centre console.

 **Warning:** Check the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol for correct airbag status.

 **Warning:** Failure to follow these instructions can interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

 **Warning:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

After all passengers have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit correctly. A correctly seated passenger sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centred on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting incorrectly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if a passenger slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or side ways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat and the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is ON, it is possible that the person is not sitting correctly in the seat.

If this happens:

1. Set the ignition to OFF. Ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
2. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centred on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
3. Start the engine and have the person stay in this position for about two minutes. This will let the system to detect that person and set the passenger's front airbag to ON.
4. If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol stays ON even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

If you think that the status of the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects
  - Lodged underneath the seat
  - Between the seat cushion and the centre console
  - Hanging off the seat back
  - Stowed in the seat back document pocket
  - Placed on the passenger's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

These conditions can cause the weight of a correctly seated passenger to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat can appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described.

If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is ON, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

1. Set the ignition to OFF.
2. Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
3. Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
4. Start the engine.
5. Wait at least two minutes and verify that the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is no longer ON.

If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol stays ON, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take the vehicle immediately to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

## Determining if the System is Operational

The warning symbol in the instrument cluster shows the status of the system. A problem with the system is shown by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will either flash or stay ON.
- The warning symbol will not come ON immediately after the ignition is set to ON.

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not operate correctly in a collision.

## LATCH Anchors

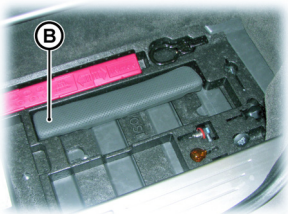
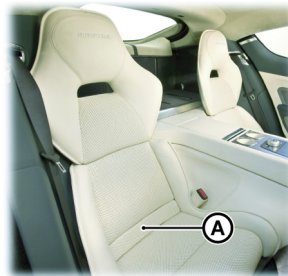
**⚠ Warning:** An unsecured child seat is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other passengers. Make sure the child seat is correctly secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions.

**⚠ Warning:** When installing the child seat, make sure that there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the LATCH anchors. If seat belts or a foreign object prevents the child seat from being securely attached to the LATCH anchors, the child seat could move in a sudden stop or collision causing serious injury or death to the child or other passengers.

This vehicle is equipped with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tether for Children) anchors for the installation of child seats on the rear passenger seats. The LATCH anchors are located between the seat base and the seat back. The position of the anchors is shown by two tags at the base of the seat.

Remove the lower seat back panel (A). Place the panel in its storage area in boot (B).

 The seat back trim panels are left and right handed.



Secure the child seat using the LATCH anchors, following the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



## Tether Anchors

**⚠ Warning:** *An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Make sure that the child seat tether strap is always used when installing a child seat with LATCH anchors.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly installed child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Make sure the child seat tether strap is free from obstructions above and below. Do not place any items on the tether strap between the child seat and the tether anchor point. Do not place tether strap over any items between the child seat and the tether anchor point.*

A tether is a strap that connects the top of a child seat to a tether anchor point on the vehicle to reduce excessive movement of the child seat in the event of a collision. The purpose of a tether strap is to provide additional protection for the child seat occupant in the event of a serious impact. The tether strap is supplementary to the seat belts.

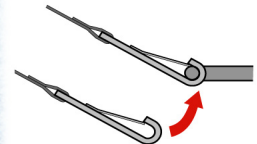
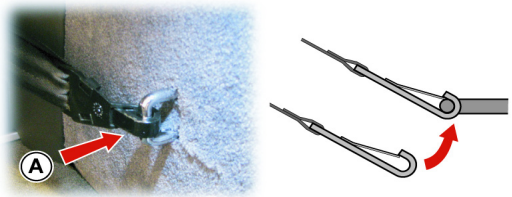
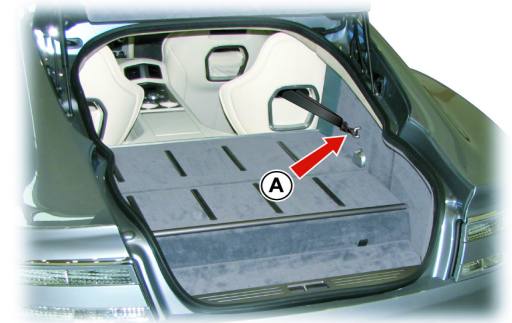
Your vehicle has a tether anchor point for each rear passenger seat.

### Correct Assembly of Tether Anchorages

The tether anchor point is located at the rear of the boot area (A). The boot space area must be configured as solution two (Refer to 'Boot Storage', page 3.21)

Route the tether strap through the seat back as shown. Engage the tether clip to the anchor point as shown and make sure that the locking spring has fully closed to prevent accidental disengagement.

Always make sure that the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.



## Automatic Locking Retractors

**⚠ Warning:** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

Aston Martin does not recommend any specific child seat for this vehicle **which require the use of the vehicle seat belt for installation.**

The Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) system is designed to securely hold child seats. The ALR system temporarily locks the seat belt that is securing a child seat.

### ALR Operation

Gently pull out the seat belt until fully extended. The ALR system will only engage at the maximum extension point of the seat belt.

Thread the belt tongue through the child seat as instructed by the child seat manufacturer. Engage the tongue into the belt buckle.

Adjust the tongue position on the belt, if necessary, to make sure that the lower belt run is tight and then allow the upper run of the seat belt to fully retract until the child seat is securely held. The ALR system will be heard 'clicking' as the seat belt retracts.

When fully retracted, pull down on the upper run of the belt to check that the ALR lock has engaged.

 When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the seat belt tension and then pull the seat belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

The ALR system will disengage when the seat belt is fully retracted. The seat belt may then be worn when required as a normal seat belt. Once the ALR is disengaged, the seat belt must be fully extended to re-engage the system on the next occasion that a child seat is installed.

## Child Seats

**⚠ Warning:** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not seat a child aged 12 or younger, or weighing 36 kg or less in the car without an appropriate child seat or booster cushion.

**Aston Martin strongly recommends not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.**

### Use of Child Seats

Child safety seats must be in conformity with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. Look for the statement on the box and seat.

When installing child seats on the rear seat(s) make sure that there is sufficient room between the front seat back and the child seat, if required move the front seat forward.

Look for the following when selecting a child seat:

- It should have a label certifying that it meets the applicable Safety Standards
- Carefully read the instructions supplied with the child seat. Make sure you understand them and can install and use the device correctly and safely in the vehicle

- Make sure that the child seat is appropriate for the child's weight and development. The label required by the standard or regulations, or instructions for infant seats, usually provide this information

An infant or child that is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child seat.

Children could be endangered in a crash if their child seat is not correctly secured in the vehicle.

Never hold a baby or child on your lap while riding in the vehicle. Consult with local manufacturers of forward facing restraint and booster cushions. These manufacturers can supply you with advice on the safety of their particular child restraints.

Check the seat manufacturers instructions for correct use and installation – use the correct size seat and correctly secure the seat in the vehicle in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. Be sure to read and follow the 'Installation and Use Instructions' provided with the child seat.

## Boot Storage

The boot area has three different configuration options to let various small or large items be placed in the boot.

### Configuration One

Lift the boot divide panel up.

With the boot divide panel raised and the parcel shelf in place items placed in the boot are hidden from view.



### Configuration Two

Lay the boot divide panel down.



### Configuration Three

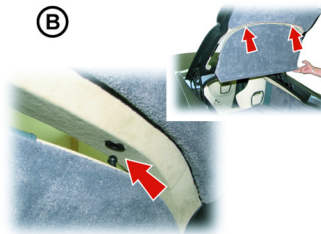
Lower one or both of the rear seat backs.



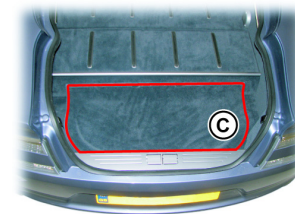
## Parcel Shelf

The parcel shelf has two lugs which locate into the boot lid and two magnets which hold the shelf in place.

To remove the parcel shelf over come the magnets and pull the base away from the glass by two or three centimetres (A). Then gently lower the shelf away from the boot lid to release the two lugs (B). To install the shelf insert the two lugs into the boot lid and bring the top of the shelf up to the boot lid and let the magnets hold the shelf in place.



When not in use the parcel shelf locates in the boot floor space, with the two leather straps facing down and the two lugs facing the boot rear, as shown (C).

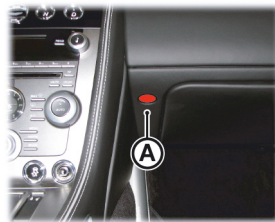




## Cabin Storage

### Glove Box

Press the glove box button (A) to open. Push up to close.



### Cup Holders

**⚠ Warning: Only use the cup holder when safe to do so.**

**⚠ Warning: Do not place hot drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. There is a risk of scalding.**

**⚠ Warning: Use soft cups only. Hard cups or objects can cause personal injury in a collision.**

Cup holders are located the front and rear centre consoles.



### Front Cubby Box

The armrest cubby box has an iPod, USB ports, an auxiliary socket and an accessory socket.



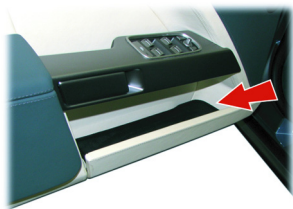
### Rear Cubby Box

The rear cubby box has the auxiliary inputs for the rear entertainment system and an accessory socket.



## Door Pockets

All doors have pockets.



## Front Seat Pockets

Do not place items in these pockets if a child restraint system is being used.



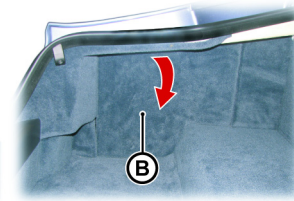
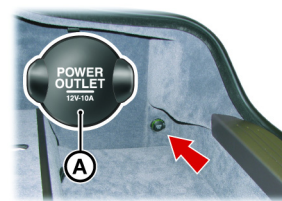
## Accessory Sockets

**⚠ Warning:** *Damage to electrical circuits will result if more than 10 amps is drawn from the accessory socket. Only connect accessories which are designed for use in a motor vehicle.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Prolonged use of an accessory socket when vehicle engine is set to OFF may seriously discharge battery.*

**⚠ Foreign items can get into the socket and cause damage - always place the cover on the accessory socket when not in use.**

Accessory sockets are mounted in the front and rear armrest cubby boxes, the boot right side wall (A) and the boot left side wall behind the trim panel (B) and may be used to power any 12 volt vehicle accessory requiring a current of less than 10 amps.



## Ashtray and Cigar Lighter

Read the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that you do not connect any device which would exceed current rating of the accessory socket.

Option

 **Warning: The cigar lighter is heated to 'red heat' when in use. Take care to avoid burns. Do not allow children to play with the cigar lighter.**

The cigar lighter can be used in any in cabin accessory socket when the vehicle key is in ignition position 'I' or 'II'.

Push down until it clicks. The lighter will pop up when ready for use.

 **Foreign items can get into the socket and cause damage - always place the lighter back into the accessory socket when not in use.**

The ashtray installs into any of the cup holders.

## Electric Windows

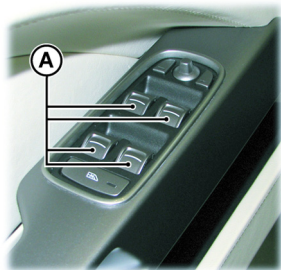
 **Warning: Misuse of the window switches, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the window closure. Drivers must advise all passengers of the possible danger and make sure that all obstructions are clear before raising the window.**

 *The windows can be operated up to one minute after the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.*

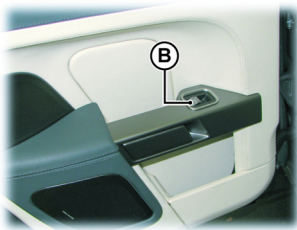
Each vehicle door has its own window switch. The drivers door window switch can operate all windows and, for safety, can lock both rear door window switches.

To raise and lower the windows the vehicle key must be at ignition position 'I' or 'II'.

Lightly press and hold a window switch ((A (drivers door) or (B (other doors))) to lower the window in one movement. Lightly press and release the window switch to lower the window in stages.



Firmly press and release to lower the window with one touch.



Lightly pull back and hold to raise the window in one movement. Lightly pull back and release, to raise the window in stages. Firmly pull back and release to raise the window in one movement (only when the door is closed)<sup>1</sup>.

If a rear door window is lowered the front door window (on the same side) will also lower a few millimetres (still maintaining a water tight seal). As the rear window is raised the front window will raise.

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.35).

### Operation with Vehicle Key

When unlocking the vehicle with the vehicle key, press to unlock and hold until the windows start to move, then release. The door windows will fully lower.

### Window Anti-Trap

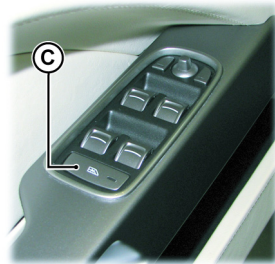
The anti-trap sensor detects an obstruction between the window glass and the door seal during window closing. The window will continue to close until the obstruction is sensed by the door seal sensor, closing then stops and the window backs off. This is a safety feature designed to prevent inadvertent closing of a window on vulnerable parts of the body or other obstructions. Remove any obstruction and then close the window.

If, for any reason it is required to override the anti-trap mechanism, lift and hold the relevant window switch until the window has closed.

<sup>1</sup>. One movement operation will not work if the anti-trap is faulty

## Rear Door Window Lock

The rear door windows can be locked so that rear passengers can not operate them. Open or close the windows as required then press and release the rear door window lock button (C) to lock. Press and release again to unlock.



## Door Sealing

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that all passengers are clear when the window mechanism is operating.**

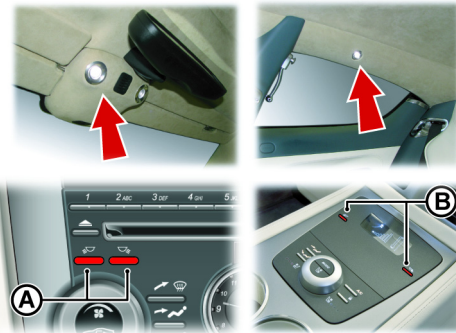
To minimise wind noise and to make sure that the window seal is watertight a door sealing system is used to provide a tight fit of the door glass to the seals around the top of the door opening.

When a door is opened, the windows in both doors, on the same side, automatically lower a small distance to clear the door seal. As the door is closed, both door windows automatically, after a pause, lift against the body frame rubber seals (rear door lifts first). As the vehicle speed reaches 7 km/h the front door windows will lift a small amount again to make sure of a good water tight seal.

## Reading Lamps

Reading lamps are located in the front and rear environments. To operate the lamps (ON or OFF) press the individual switches mounted on the front and rear centre console (A and B).

Unless set to OFF or ON they will continue to operate up to six minutes after the ignition is set to OFF.





ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

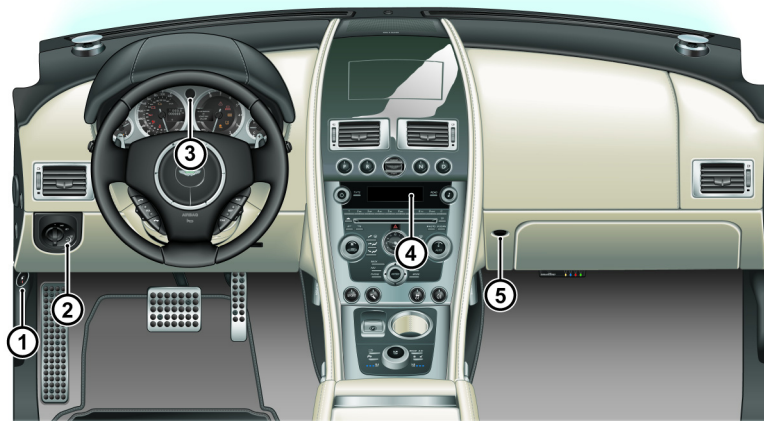


ASTON MARTIN

The background of the page is a grayscale, high-resolution photograph of a car's interior. It shows a close-up of the instrument cluster on the left, featuring a large, curved digital display. To the right of the display is the center console, which includes a gear shifter and various control buttons. The image is slightly blurred, giving it a soft, artistic feel. The word 'Controls' is printed in a large, bold, black serif font in the upper right corner.

# Controls

|                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Controls Overview .....              | 4.2  |
| Instrument Cluster.....              | 4.3  |
| Information and Warning Symbols..... | 4.4  |
| Centre Stack Controls.....           | 4.8  |
| Ignition Control .....               | 4.10 |
| Stalk Controls .....                 | 4.12 |
| Vehicle Horn.....                    | 4.13 |
| Master Lamp Switch .....             | 4.13 |
| Trip Computer .....                  | 4.14 |
| Cruise Control.....                  | 4.16 |
| Ambient Temperature .....            | 4.17 |
| Tyre Pressure Monitoring.....        | 4.18 |



**[1] FUEL FLAP RELEASE:** Press to open the fuel flap. Close the fuel flap by pressing down on the flap until the lock engages.



**Filler Flap Emergency Release:** (Refer to 'Fuel Filler Flap Emergency Release', page 5.16)

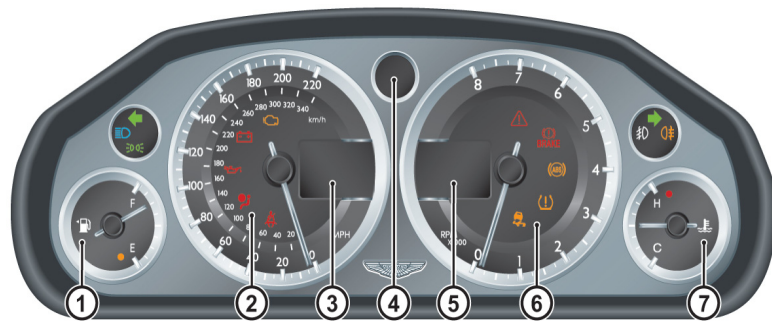
**[2] MASTER LAMP SWITCH:** Three position master lamp switch, which controls the vehicle external lamps (OFF, side lamps and main lamps) (Refer to 'Master Lamp Switch', page 4.13).

**[3] INSTRUMENT CLUSTER:** (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.3).

**[4] CENTRE STACK:** (Refer to 'Centre Stack Controls', page 4.8).

**[5] GLOVE BOX RELEASE:** Press to open the Glove box. Push the Glove box lid up to close.





**[1] FUEL GAUGE:** Shows how much fuel is in the fuel tank. Refuel as soon as possible when the low fuel symbol comes ON.

**[2] SPEEDOMETER:** Shows vehicle road speed.

**[3] MESSAGE CENTRE (LEFT):** Shows the following:

- **Vehicle Speed:** Shows the vehicle road speed in a digital format.

**[4] GEAR POSITION INDICATOR :** Shows the current transmission position when in **Auto Drive** mode and the current gear selection when in **Touchtronic** mode (Refer to 'Automatic Transmission', page 5.5).

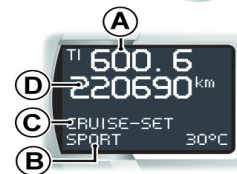
**[5] MESSAGE CENTRE (RIGHT):** Shows the following:

- **Trip Meter (A):** Shows distances travelled since last reset of trip meters T1 and T2. Toggle between T1 and T2 by pressing **T1/T2** (E) for less than three seconds. Press **T1/T2** for more than three seconds to reset the trip meter on show.
- **Sport Mode Status (B):** Shows SPORT when sport mode is ON .
- **Cruise Status (C):** Shows CRUISE when cruise control is ON (Refer to 'Cruise Control', page 4.16).
- **Odometer (D):** Shows the total distance covered by the vehicle.
- **Driver Information and Warnings**

Messages show if an unsatisfactory condition is detected. Message priority is shown by a red or amber triangle above the message display.

**Red:** Potential personal danger or danger of damage to the vehicle.

**Amber:** Advisory, shows possible degraded vehicle performance.



Warning messages will show when the ignition is ON and will cycle automatically.

View and acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **T1/T2** button (E).



View and acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **READ** button (F).

- **Service Intervals**

TIME FOR REGULAR SERVICE will be shown when a regular vehicle service is due. This message will show at ignition ON (for two minutes) until the regular service has taken place.

- **Trip Computer**

The message centre (right) defaults to the trip computer when there are no messages to show.



**[6] TACHOMETER:** Shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute x 1000.

**[7] ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE:** Shows the temperature of the engine coolant.

## Information and Warning Symbols



**[1] LOW FUEL WARNING:** Comes ON when only approximately 13 ltr of fuel or 80 km distance is available. At 13 ltr / 80 km and 7 ltr / 40 km an audible 'beep' will sound and the 'estimated distance' message will show (for 20 seconds) in the message centre (right). The arrow head shows which side of the vehicle the fuel flap is.



**[2] LEFT TURN INDICATORS:** Flashes with the indicator or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).



**[3] HEADLAMPS:** Shows that the main beam of the headlamps is in use.



**[4] SIDE LAMPS:** Shows that the side lamps, dip or main beams are ON.



**[5] PATS:** If this symbol flashes continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will stay immobilised. If the symbol is ON continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will start but PATS has gone into 'Fail Safe' mode (Refer to 'Passive Anti-Theft System', page 2.12).



**⚠ Warning:** Stop immediately if the check engine symbol flashes, do not drive the vehicle. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

**[6] ⚠ CHECK ENGINE:** Steady amber shows a fault in the engine management system. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical signs of degraded engine performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.

Flashing amber shows a major fault in the engine management system. Stop immediately. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

**[7] ⚠ IGNITION WARNING:** Comes ON when the ignition is set to ON and goes OFF when the engine is started and battery charging commences. Comes ON if battery charging fails whilst driving.

**[8] ⚠ OIL PRESSURE WARNING:** Comes ON when the engine oil pressure falls below minimum. Do not continue driving if this symbol stays ON. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not drive the vehicle if the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

**[9] ⚠ SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM:** At vehicle key position 'I' and 'II' or on vehicle start up, this symbol comes ON for a few seconds as a readiness sign. If it does not come ON, or if it does not go OFF after a few seconds, or if it comes ON whilst driving, the airbag self diagnostic system has detected a fault.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not drive the vehicle if the seat belt warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

**[10] ⚠ SEAT BELT WARNING:** This warning symbol will come ON and a chime will sound for six seconds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is set to ON. The chime will continue to operate at different vehicle speeds until the seat belt is fastened (market dependant).

**[11] ⚠ WARNING TRIANGLE:** Shows red or amber depending on the warning or information message priority.

**⚠ Warning:** If the brake warning symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the park brake do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

**(!)**  
**[12] BRAKE WARNING:** At ignition ON this symbol comes ON when the park brake is applied and goes OFF when the park brake is fully released. If the symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the park brake, it shows that either the brake fluid level is low or that the brake pads require regular maintenance.

**⚠ Warning:** If the ABS warning symbol stays ON, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

**(ABS)**  
**[13] ABS WARNING:** If this symbol stays ON or comes ON while driving there is a fault in the ABS control circuits. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical signs of degraded brake performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible if this symbol stays ON.

**(!)**  
**[14] TYRE PRESSURE:** If this symbol stays ON or comes ON while driving, a tyre(s) air pressure is below specification.

**(DSC)**  
**[15] DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL:** When Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is ON this symbol will flash when the DSC system is operating. If, while DSC is ON, the DSC symbol stays ON or it comes ON whilst driving, the DSC system has detected a fault. A DSC fault message will show in the message centre (right). Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.

**(P)**  
**[16] ELECTRONIC PARK BRAKE:** This symbol shows if there is a fault with the electronic park brake. A warning message will also show in the message centre (right) along with the amber warning triangle. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.

**(F)**  
**[17] REAR FOG LAMP:** Shows if the rear fog lamps are ON.

**(R)**  
**[18] RIGHT TURN INDICATORS:** Flashes with the indicator or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).

**(H)**  
**[19] HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE:** Shows when the engine coolant temperature exceeds 120°C.

## Engine Oil Level Sensing

**⚠ The electronic engine oil level sensing system does not replace the need for the owner to regularly check their engine oil using the dipstick. Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever is the soonest.**

This vehicle has an electronic engine Oil Level Sensing (OLS) system which records the engine oil level each time the fuel tank is filled with 25 litres or more of fuel.

**⚠ Running the engine with engine oil below the minimum mark on the dipstick can cause serious engine damage.**

**📖 The system may not record an oil level if the engine oil temperature is low or if the time to refuel is not sufficient for a consistent oil level to be recorded.**

For the correct engine oil refer to Fluids and Capacities (Refer to 'Fluids and Capacities', page 12.8).

If the engine oil level is low the message OIL LEVEL LOW ADD 1L will show in the message centre (right) along with an amber warning triangle and a chime sound. The engine oil level is low and should be topped up with one litre of engine oil as soon as possible.

The engine oil level should then be checked and topped up as soon as possible (Refer to 'Fluid Levels', page 11.8).

Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message. The message will clear when the ignition is set to OFF and then ON.

## Low Outside Temperature

**⚠ Warning: Even if the ICE WARNING message does not show, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.**

At temperatures below 4°C the message ICE WARNING is shown in the message centre (right), this shows to the driver that frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces.

The amber warning triangle  will also come ON.

The message and warning triangle will continue to show until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.

## Warning Symbols

As the ignition is set to ON, the electronic control units complete a self check. During these checks the following symbols will come ON for five seconds and SYSTEM CHECK will show on the message centre (right).

Under normal circumstances most warning symbols will go OFF at the end of the individual system check if system checks are satisfactory.





**[1] SATELLITE NAVIGATION SCREEN:** Opens when the Satellite Navigation system is set to ON (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 10.1).

**[2] IGNITION CONTROL:** Insert the vehicle key for ignition positions '0', 'I', 'II' and engine start (Refer to 'Ignition Control', page 4.10).

**[3] TRANSMISSION CONTROLS:** Park, reverse, neutral and drive transmission controls (Refer to 'Automatic Transmission', page 5.5).

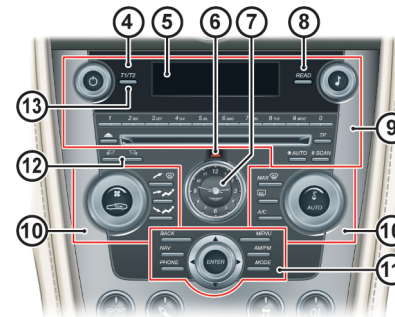
**[4] AIRBAG STATUS:** Shows the passenger airbag status (Refer to 'Front Passenger Sensing', page 3.15).

**[5] DISPLAY:** Shows options, menus and information.

**[6] HAZARD WARNING LAMP:** Press to set the hazard warning lamps to ON or OFF.

**[7] CLOCK:**

- Vehicles with no satellite navigation:  
To set the time press **MENU**. Go to <Car settings...> Enter <Clock>.
- Vehicles with Garmin satellite navigation:  
To set the time press **NAV**. Use the satellite navigation screen and go to <Settings> Enter <Time>.



**[8] READ:** Press to view and acknowledge messages.

**[9] AUDIO CONTROLS:** (Refer to 'Audio', page 7.1)

**[10] CLIMATE CONTROLS:** (Refer to 'Climate Controls', page 6.2).

**[11] MODE AND MENU NAVIGATION:** Select functions and move back in the menus. Use the joystick to navigate for menus, music tracks, radio stations. Press to accept.

**[12] READING LAMPS:** Driver and passenger reading lamps.

**[13] T1/T2:** Select between two trip meters (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.3).

**[14] REAR FOG LAMPS:** Used with the dipped beam when fog or mist is causing restricted visibility. They **must** be set to OFF when visibility clears to reduce glare to the drivers of following vehicles.

**[15] DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL:** The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system defaults to ON at each ignition ON. Press and hold for approximately four seconds for sport mode. Press and hold again for approximately four seconds to set DSC to OFF. Press and release to set DSC ON again (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control', page 5.13).

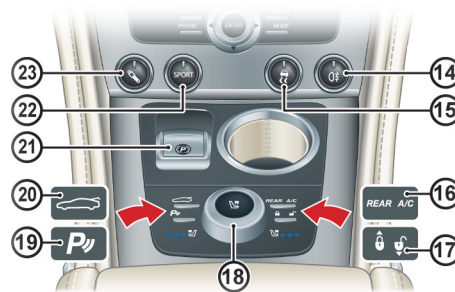
**[16] REAR A/C:** Press and release to set the rear climate from the front controls (Refer to 'Rear Environment', page 6.7).

**[17] MASTER VEHICLE LOCK:** Press to lock all doors and disable the boot lock switch. Press again to unlock (Refer to 'Master Locks', page 2.6).

**[18] SEAT TEMPERATURE CONTROL:** Press and release to select the left or right seat. Turn the dial to set seat temperature (Refer to 'Temperature Controlled Seats', page 3.3).

**[19] PARKING ASSIST:** Defaults to OFF at each ignition ON. Park assist comes ON when reverse gear is selected. Press and release to set parking assist to OFF (Refer to 'Parking Assist', page 5.18).

**[20] BOOT OPEN:** Press to open the boot lid.



**[21] PARK BRAKE:** Pull the park brake switch up and release to apply the park brake. To release the park brake the ignition control must be at position 'II', then apply pressure to the foot brake and press down on the park brake switch and release (Refer to 'Park Brake', page 5.11).

**[22] SPORT MODE:** Press the sport button once to enter transmission sport mode and press again to exit (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.8).

**[23] ADAPTIVE DAMPING:** The Adaptive Damping System (ADS) defaults to normal mode at each ignition ON. Press and release for ADS sport mode (button LED ON) (Refer to 'Adaptive Damping', page 5.14).

## Ignition Control

To access vehicle functions and to start the engine the vehicle key must be inserted in to the ignition control.



**⚠ Warning:** Only use the vehicle key in the ignition control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the ignition control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the ignition control to fail.

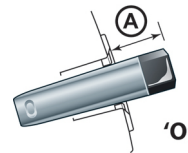
**⚠ The vehicle key must only be inserted into the ignition control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the ignition control.**

### Position '0' (Ignition OFF)

Auxiliaries OFF (audio, rear seat entertainment system, satellite navigation, hands-free phone not available), steering lock ON. Seats can be adjusted.

Gently insert the vehicle key, indents first, into the ignition control. Press in until the key clicks into place (approximately 20 mm (A)) then release. The key is docked at this point.

Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the ignition control.

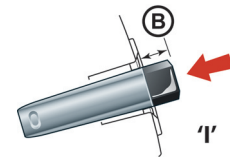


### Position '1' (Ignition OFF and Accessories ON)

Auxiliaries ON (audio, rear seat entertainment, satellite navigation, hands-free phone available), steering lock ON.

- If already in position '0' gently press the key until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lamps come ON (a further 10 mm (B)) and release for position '1'.
- Or insert the key into the ignition control and move straight to position '1'. Press in until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lamps come ON.

Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the ignition control.





## Position 'II' (Ignition ON)

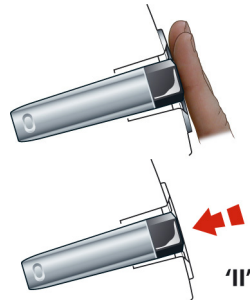
Ignition and all other electrical systems ON, steering lock OFF.

**! Do not apply the brake pedal unless intending to start the engine.**

 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.

- If the key is already in position '0' or 'I' gently press the key until it is flush with the ignition control bezel and release.
- Or insert the key into the ignition control and move straight to position 'II'. Gently press the key until it is flush with the ignition control bezel and release.

The Instrument cluster lamps will come ON, the vehicle systems will wake up and the steering lock will release.



To start the engine from this position fully apply the brake pedal and press the key fully in (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.3).

To remove the vehicle key from position 'II' press the key fully in **twice** (do not apply the brake pedal) and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Pull the key from the ignition control. Once in position 'I' after 10 seconds the steering lock will engage.

 If the vehicle key is pressed **fully** into the ignition control and released for position 'II', the key must be returned to position 'I' to start the engine.

## Preventing Unnecessary Battery Drain

If the vehicle key is left in the ignition control (position '0'), some vehicle circuits will stay ON and unnecessary current will be drawn from the battery.

Always remove the vehicle key from the ignition control whenever the ignition is set to OFF.

## Stalk Controls

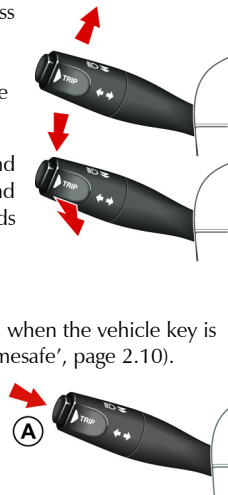
### Left Side Stalk

**Turn Signals :** Press up for a right turn, press down for a left turn. Returns to the centre position on completion of a manoeuvre. Hold against spring pressure to show a lane change.

**Main and Dipped Beam :** Pull forwards and latch for main beam. Pull forwards again and latch to return to dipped beam. Pull forwards and release without latching, at any time while the vehicle key is in the ignition control, to flash main beam ON and OFF.

Pull forwards and release without latching, when the vehicle key is removed, to start Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.10).

**Trip Computer :** Repeated pressing of the trip function button (A) moves through the trip computer displays (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.14).



### Right Side Stalk

**Windscreen Wiper Control :**

[1] : OFF.

[2] : Automatic Wipe.

[3] : Normal Speed Wipe.

[4] : Fast Wipe.

**Demand Wipe:** Pull the stalk forwards.

The windscreen wipers will return to their park position if the ignition is set to OFF or the bonnet is unlatched, regardless of the right stalk position.

**Speed Sensitive Wipe :** If the wipers are at fast wipe, when the vehicle slows down (below 11 km/h) the wipers will go to normal wipe speed.

If the wipers are at normal speed when the vehicle slows down (below 11 km/h) the wipers will go to automatic wipe (position 2). As soon as the vehicle speeds up (above 15 km/h) the wipers will return to their original setting.

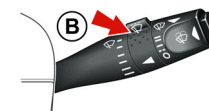


**Automatic Rain Sensor Wiper Control :**

Automatic rain sensor wiper control increases or decreases the sensitivity in six steps (B). Sixth position (where the arrow is set to the bottom marker) gives the least sensitivity.

Switching from OFF to automatic wiper results in a single wipe to acknowledge that the wiper control is now automatic. Each time an increase in sensitivity is made a single wipe acknowledges the increase. No wipe occurs for a decrease.

If the automatic rain sensor wiper control is not functioning correctly, check that the sensor located at the top of the windscreen is clean and clear of debris or dirt.



**Windscreen Washer Control :** Press the button (C) for more than one second to operate the windscreen washers. Operation continues until the button is released. When released the washers stop immediately but the wipers continue for a few strokes, ending with a pause and then a final wipe.

If used during normal wiper operation, the wipers operate continually irrespective of the washer operation.

**Headlamp Washers :** Headlamp washers will operate automatically, once per journey (each ignition ON), if the windscreen washers are operated and the headlamps are ON.



**Vehicle Horn**

To sound the horn press the centre pad of the steering wheel at any of the positions shown (A).



## Master Lamp Switch

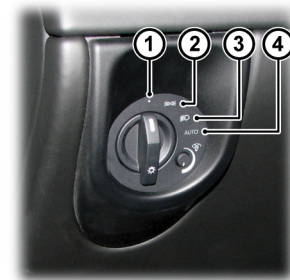
**[1] :** All external lamps OFF.

**[2] :** Side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps ON.

**[3] :** With the vehicle key at position 'II' in the ignition control, Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps.

**[4] AUTO:** With the vehicle key at position 'II' in the ignition control, if ambient light fades the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps and headlamps will switch ON automatically. If ambient light then increases, the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps and headlamps automatically go OFF.

 A light sensor at the top of the windscreen monitors ambient light levels for automatic lamps operation. Keep the windscreen clean and make sure that the sensor is not obscured. Obstructing the light in this area may lead to unwanted operation of the automatic lamps.



## Lamps ON Warning

If the vehicle side lamps are ON, and the driver's door is opened after the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition control, an audible warning will sound for a period of five minutes. To stop the audible warning set the lamps to OFF. The audible warning will also stop when the driver's door is shut - the lamps will stay ON.

## Instrument Brightness

During the daylight hours the level of instrument brightness defaults to maximum brightness.

During the twilight and night time hours a twilight sensor (A) located in the centre stack, automatically reduces the level of brightness to a preset level.

 If the twilight sensor is covered the level of brightness will stay low as if in night time mode.



The level of brightness can be reduced by using the rotary control (B). If the brightness level has been adjusted, the twilight and night time brightness level will return to the previous setting on the rotary control, each time the sensor picks up the twilight hours.

Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.



## Trip Computer

Press the button (A) for less than three seconds cycles through the trip computer functions one at a time. Trip computer information is viewed in the message centre (right).

 If an information message shows, after reading and acting on the information provided press the **READ** button (B) to return to the trip display.



**Range:** Estimated travel distance with fuel available (no reset). The minimum distance shown will read 20 KM. Below this distance will show ‘- - -’.

**Average Fuel:** Average fuel consumption since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average fuel consumption and average speed. INFOCENTER IS RESET will be shown in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message.

**Instantaneous Fuel:** Shows the fuel consumption over the last three seconds of travel (no reset).



**Average Speed:** Shows the average speed since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average speed and average fuel consumption. INFOCENTER IS RESET will be shown in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message.

**Present Speed:** Shows the current vehicle speed.

Driver aid only.

Trip computer default screen.

**Tyre Pressure Monitor:** Shows the current tyre pressure for all tyres (Refer to 'Tyre Pressure Monitoring', page 4.18).

**Blank Screen:** Blank screen will show.



## Display Units

The display can be set to show metric or imperial units.

With the ignition ON press the **READ** button (C) and the Trip Computer button (D) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.



## Cruise Control

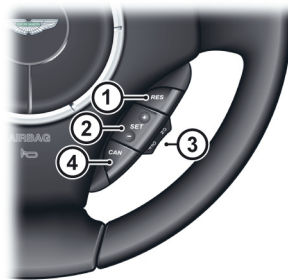
Cruise control can be used to maintain a selected vehicle speed, above 30 km/h, without having to use the accelerator.

**[1] RES:** Resume the set speed retained in memory.

**[2] SET:** Set the speed, accelerate or decelerate.

**[3] ON/OFF:** Sets cruise control to ON or OFF.

**[4] CAN:** Cancels cruise control but keeps the set speed in memory.



### Operation

**⚠ Warning:** Only use cruise control when conditions are favourable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.

Use the **ON/OFF** switch (3) to set cruise control ON and OFF. When cruise control is ON 'CRUISE' will show in the message centre (left). When travelling at the desired speed, which must be above 30 km/h, press **SET** (+ or -) (2). Cruise control will engage and maintain that speed without the need to use the accelerator pedal.

Under certain conditions cruise control will automatically set to OFF (Refer to 'Cruise Control Automatic OFF', page 4.17).

Cruise control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 30 km/h.

### Changing the Set Speed

There are three ways to change the set speed:

- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed then press **SET** (+ or -).
- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed by pressing and holding **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained, then release.
- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed in steps of 2 km/h by briefly pressing and releasing **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained.

## Resuming the Set Speed

 **RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.**

 **It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.**

 Cruise control will not resume at speeds below 30 km/h. **RES** will not operate if the ignition has been set to OFF.

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If **CAN** (4) is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, cruise control will disengage but the set speed memory will be kept. Press **RES** (1) and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

## Cruise Control Automatic OFF

Cruise control will automatically set to OFF and clear the memory when:

- The ignition is set to OFF.
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will set to OFF and cannot be used until the fault is cleared.
- The park brake is applied.
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached.

Cruise control will automatically set to OFF but the set speed will stay in the memory when:

- The **CAN** button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Vehicle speed falls below 30 km/h.
- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected.
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great.
- When the set speed is above 144 km/h; cruise control will disengage automatically after approximately 20 minutes.
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period.

## Ambient Temperature

The ambient temperature (outside temperature) is shown in the top right corner of the Infotainment centre display.

 *If the vehicle has been travelling and then is stopped in a shaded or enclosed area the ambient temperature may rise, this is due to the heat from the engine bay. The ambient temperature display will show the true ambient temperature once the vehicle is moving again or the engine bay cools down.*

 *If required the display units can be changed from °C to °F or °F to °C (Refer to 'Climate Controls', page 6.2).*

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring

**⚠ Warning: Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**

Each tyre should be checked monthly when cold, in the ambient air temperature that the vehicle is normally driven. Setting tyre pressures in a warm garage and then driving in a very low ambient may result in a low tyre pressure warning. Set the correct pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label (if your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size shown on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should make sure of the correct tyre pressure for those tyres).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that sets a tyre pressure telltale (warning) symbol to ON (A) when one or more of the tyres is significantly under or over inflated. At the same time an image of vehicle in the message centre (right) will show which tyre(s) have low or high air pressure and the current tyre pressure. When the tyre pressure telltale comes ON, stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate or deflate them to the correct pressure.

 The TPMS is not a substitute for correct tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressures, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to set the TPMS tyre pressure telltale symbol to ON.

### Malfunction Telltale

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction telltale to show when the system is not operating correctly. The TPMS malfunction telltale is combined with the tyre pressure telltale.

When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then stay ON. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.



When the malfunction telltale is ON, the system may not be able to detect or send tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions can occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from operating correctly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to make sure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function correctly.

### Operation

**⚠ When a tyre pressure warning is detected reduce the vehicle speed to an appropriate safe level and stop at the first safe and convenient place to inspect the tyre(s).**

At each ignition ON there is a short delay before tyre pressures are received, from the wheel and tyre transmitters, and shown in the message centre (right).

If the tyre telltale symbol comes ON while driving, reduce speed to 48 km/h and stop in safe place as soon as possible. Check the status of the tyre(s) in the message centre (right):



### Warning One

#### Telltale Symbol

Constant

#### Message centre (right)

CHECK TYRES (for ten seconds) followed by an image which shows which tyre(s) is affected and the current tyre pressures.

#### Fault

Tyre pressure below or above specification

#### Action

Check the tyre pressure of the affected tyre(s). Set the tyre pressure to the manufacturer's recommended pressure, as shown on the tyre label located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar.



### Warning Two

#### Telltale Symbol

Flashing for 75 seconds then constant

#### Message centre (right)

TYRE SYSTEM FAULT (for ten seconds) followed by an image which shows which tyre(s) is affected and the current tyre pressures or which transmitter is at fault.

#### Fault

System failure or tyre transmitter fault

#### Possible Cause

- The TPMS sensors have become defective
- Wheels and tyres have been installed which do not have TPMS sensors
- An unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS
- A general fault has been detected in the TPMS

#### Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 48 km/h maximum. Have the control unit and the tyre transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer



### Display Units

The display can be set to show metric or imperial units.

With the ignition ON press the **READ** button (C) and the Trip Computer button (D) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.





ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Driving

|                             |     |                                |      |
|-----------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|------|
| Driving Safety.....         | 5.2 | Anti-Lock Braking System ..... | 5.10 |
| Driving Techniques .....    | 5.2 | Park Brake.....                | 5.11 |
| Starting the Engine .....   | 5.3 | Dynamic Stability Control..... | 5.13 |
| Automatic Transmission..... | 5.5 | Adaptive Damping .....         | 5.14 |
| PRND Buttons.....           | 5.6 | Fuel Filling.....              | 5.15 |
| Touchtronic Controls.....   | 5.7 | Catalytic Converters .....     | 5.16 |
| Sport Mode .....            | 5.8 | Reversing Camera .....         | 5.17 |
| Fault Conditions.....       | 5.8 | Parking Assist.....            | 5.18 |
| Footbrake.....              | 5.9 | Rear Only Parking Assist ..... | 5.21 |

## Driving Safety

- Always wear your seat belt.
- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs.
- Always obey all speed and traffic laws and regulations. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit or than conditions allow.
- Be particularly careful driving on slippery or wet surfaces.
- This vehicle is a high performance vehicle and has handling characteristics you may not be accustomed to. Familiarise yourself with the vehicle and always drive prudently, being aware of your own limitations and the limitations of the vehicle. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly can result in accident and injury.
- Follow the maintenance schedule approved in this guide.
- Never allow the vehicle to be driven by inexperienced drivers.

## Driving Techniques

Procedures for driving this vehicle may be unfamiliar to many new owners. To make sure that you have a safe and enjoyable entry into this new phase of Aston Martin motoring please take time to safely acquire the necessary new driving skills. Practise in safe, lower speed conditions before investigating the high performance potential of the vehicle.

Performance Driving Courses are available to enable customers not only to understand the control functions of their vehicle but also the basic principles of Performance Driving.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for further information.

### Wet Conditions

When driving in wet conditions, water can build up under your tyres so that they ride on a layer of water. This is called aquaplaning or hydroplaning. When this happens, you have little or no control.

Aquaplaning is more prone to happening at higher road speeds if there is a lot of water on the road and particularly if the tyres are also under inflated or approaching minimum tread depth.

It is important to take bends or curves at a safe, reasonable speed, particularly when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

**Slow down when it is raining.**

### Track Days

Before using this vehicle on track days contact your Aston Martin Dealer for vehicle set up, service parts and recommendations.

### Driving Through Deep Water

 ***If in any doubt whether to drive through deep water, always take the side of caution to avoid potentially costly damage to the vehicle's engine or other essential systems.***

If driving on flooded roads, through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed with extreme caution, especially when the depth is not known. Never drive in water deeper than the lower edge of the front bumper. Water can be splashed up into the engine air intakes located in the front upper grille and cause extensive damage to the engine or the vehicle may stall.

When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Once through the water, always dry the brakes by driving slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

 *Waves caused by other vehicles or natural causes can also splash water in the engine air intakes.*

## Running-In

This vehicle is fully hot tested during manufacture and no special running-in procedures are necessary. Nevertheless it is recommended to limit engine loads (e.g. by accelerating gently and by using lower gears on steep hills or when negotiating tight turns) during the first 1500 km.

## Starting the Engine

**⚠ Warning: Only use the vehicle key in the ignition control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the ignition control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the ignition control unit to fail.**

**! In extreme low temperatures (-20°C and below) do not allow the engine to 'rev' above 4000 rpm, while at standstill or when moving off, until the coolant temperature gauge reaches normal operating temperature. Revving the engine before fully warmed up may cause severe engine and transaxle damage.**

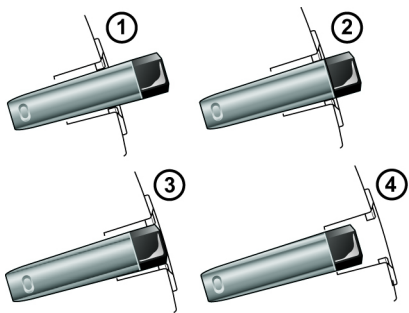
**! Do not press the vehicle key while driving. If the key is pressed in and released the engine will stop. If the key is removed from the ignition control while driving the engine will stop but the steering lock will not engage until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**

**! The vehicle key must only be inserted into the ignition control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the ignition control.**



**📖** Make sure that you are wearing appropriate footwear to efficiently operate the control pedals. Make sure that pedal movement is not restricted by floor mats or other objects trapped beneath pedals.

## Ignition Sequence



[1] : Position '0' (Ignition OFF)

[2] : Position 'I' (Ignition OFF and Accessories ON)

[3] : Position 'II' (Ignition ON)

[4] : Engine start

## Engine Start

Check that the park brake is applied.

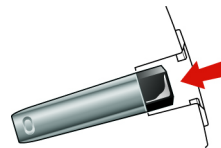
Fully press the brake pedal down.

Insert the vehicle key into the ignition control and press the key fully in (the ignition control will show red), hold in until the engine starts then release.

The vehicle key will sit flush with the ignition control bezel while the engine is running. The ignition control will show a white light when the engine is running, and then fade out.

 When starting the engine the vehicle system will take short time (approximately one second) to complete a system check and release the steering lock before allowing the engine to crank.

If the engine fails to start, release the key, then press the key fully in again **without the brake pedal pressed down** and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Start the engine start procedure again.



## Starting From Cold

The Engine Control Module (ECM) automatically compensates for cold or warm start conditions and makes appropriate adjustments to the fuel and air mixture and ignition timing.

## Stopping the Engine

Press the vehicle key fully in and release. The engine will stop as the key returns to position 'I'. Withdraw the vehicle key from the ignition control.



## Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 6,850 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

## Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission has two drive modes.

### Auto Drive Mode

In auto drive mode gearshifts are made using the Park, Reverse, Neutral and Drive (PRND) buttons mounted on the centre stack. While driving forward gearshifts are made automatically according to various driving parameters, i.e. road speed, current selected gear and accelerator demands. When the vehicle is stationary the transmission will select first gear, ready to move off immediately when the accelerator is pressed.

While in auto drive mode move to touchtronic mode at any time by pulling back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddles, mounted behind the steering wheel. As a paddle is pulled back a gearshift will occur, this will be an upshift or downshift according to which paddle is pulled.

### Kick-Down

In auto drive mode kick-down is used in circumstances where rapid acceleration is required, i.e. when overtaking. Kick-down operates when the accelerator pedal is quickly and fully depressed, causing the transmission to change down to the lowest gear possible to achieve maximum acceleration. The gear engaged depends on the road speed at the time of kick-down.

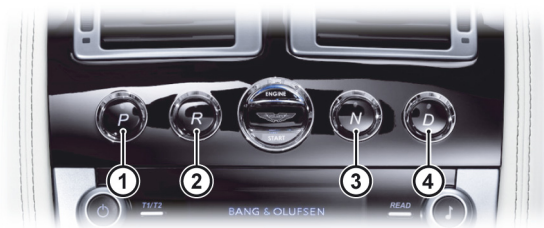
### Touchtronic Mode

In touchtronic mode forward gears and Neutral are selected by using the paddles located behind the steering wheel. Reverse and park selected by using the PRND buttons.

While in touchtronic mode move to auto drive mode at any time by pressing the **DRIVE** button.

 *Neutral can also be selected by pressing the **NEUTRAL** button.*

## PRND Buttons



**[1] PARK:** Press and release to select park once the vehicle is stationary. The transmission will mechanically lock. If the vehicle key is moved to position '0' or removed from the ignition control while the vehicle is at a standstill, the transmission will automatically select park.

⚠ **Always make sure that the park brake is ON.**

📖 *It is not possible to select Park above 2 km/h.*

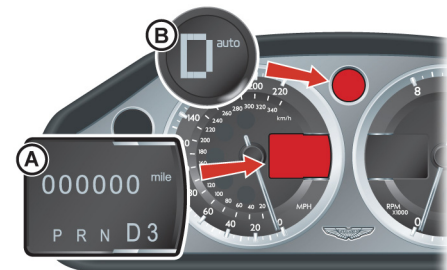
**[2] REVERSE:** When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press and release to select Reverse. When reverse is selected, **R** will show red in the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) (B) and a warning will be heard.

**[3] NEUTRAL:** When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press and release to select Neutral.

**[4] DRIVE:** When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press and release to select forward gears.

📖 *If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will show PRESS BRAKE PEDAL and a warning will be heard.*

The left message centre (A) shows the current gear selection R, D1, D2, etc., while the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) (B) shows D (Drive), R (Reverse) or P (Park) according to current gear position. While in auto drive mode the GPID will show 'auto'.



### Vehicle Rocking Motion

If the vehicle speed is less than 4 km/h, reverse may be selected from drive, without pressing the brake pedal, to create a vehicle 'rocking' motion i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc. If 4 km/h is exceeded then the transmission will automatically select Neutral.



## Touchtronic Controls

Forward gearshifts are selected by pulling back and releasing the gearshift paddles mounted on the steering column. Neutral is selected by pulling back both paddles together and releasing.



Park and reverse are selected by using the centre stack mounted PRND buttons.

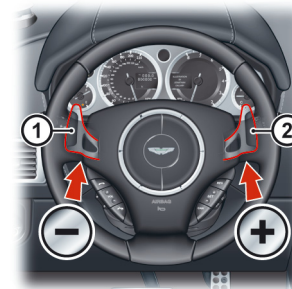
[1] : Downshift paddle.

[2] : Upshift paddle.

 *Neutral can also be selected by pressing N.*

From park, reverse or neutral, and with the footbrake applied, pull back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle to enter touchtronic mode. As the vehicle speed increases and decreases, make upshifts and downshifts by pulling and releasing the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle.

If no gearshift has been requested by pulling back on a paddle, upshifts and downshifts will occur automatically if the engine speed rises or lowers to its maximum or minimum operating limits (unless the transmission is in sport mode (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.8)).



When stationary select neutral by pulling back on both gearshift paddles simultaneously. When selecting neutral from park the brake pedal must be depressed.

The left message centre shows the actual gear currently selected R, D1, D2, etc. The GPID also shows the current gear selected but may show the target gear when a gearshift is in progress (either 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, R or P). The GPID will show 'touch'.



## Sport Mode

Sport mode can be selected while in auto drive or touchtronic modes. Press and release the Sport button (A) to enter or exit sport mode. The Sport button LED will come ON and SPORT will show in the message centre (left) when sport mode is ON.

When Sport mode is ON while in:

**Auto Mode:** Upshifts and downshifts occur at higher engine speeds to provide a sportier drive.

 *If sport mode is selected while in auto drive sixth gear a downshift to fifth gear will occur (this will not happen if cruise control is ON) and sixth gear will be inhibited until sport mode is set to OFF.*

**Touchtronic Mode:** Automatic upshifts are prevented, the upshift paddle must be pulled back and released to make an upshift (downshifts will occur automatically if the engine speed lowers to its minimum operating limits).



To maintain speed and smoothness while driving in touchtronic sport mode, the current gear, shown in the GPID, will flash red at the optimum time to make an upshift.

 *To protect the engine and transmission, when in touchtronic mode, an automatic upshift from fifth to sixth gear will occur when the engine speed reaches 6600 rpm.*

### Keep Sport Mode

When the ignition is set to OFF, sport mode will reset to OFF. This is the default setting.

If you would like sport mode to be ON when the ignition is set to ON, do the procedure that follows: Make sure that the **NAV** (B) button is not illuminated. Press **MENU** (C). Navigate to <Car settings...> Press **ENTER** (D). Navigate to <Keep sport mode>, Press **ENTER** to set <Keep sport mode> to ON.

To return sport mode to the default setting, do the procedure that follows: Make sure that the **NAV** button is not illuminated. Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Car settings...> Press **ENTER**. Navigate to <Keep sport mode>, Press **ENTER** to set <Keep sport mode> to OFF.



## Fault Conditions

### Limp-home Mode

If a fault is detected the vehicle will go into one of three limp home modes:

**Electrical:** GEARBOX FAULT REDUCED FUNCTION will show in the message centre (right). Touchtronic and sport modes will be disabled. Gearshifts will still be possible but shift quality will be degraded.

 *In certain circumstances forward drive will be restricted to a fixed gear.*

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

**Reduced Engine Performance:** REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE will show in the message centre (right). Engine performance will be restricted. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

**Mechanical:** LIMPHOME NO GEAR CHANGE POSSIBLE will show in the message centre (right) and a warning sound will be heard. If travelling forwards in auto drive or touchtronic mode the vehicle will go into a locked gear (third or fifth depending on vehicle speed).

**⚠ Do not attempt to change gear position while in mechanical limp home mode. If a gearshift request is detected at a speed below 20 km/h the engine will stop and the parklock will come ON.**

**⚠ At a speed above 20 km/h the request and any other transmission request will be rejected and the vehicle will continue in third or fifth gear.**

If entering mechanical limp home mode in any position other than auto drive or touchtronic mode the parklock will come ON (Refer to 'Parklock Override', page 11.21). Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Footbrake

The footbrake operates through a vacuum boosted, dual (diagonal split) circuit, hydraulic system incorporating an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

**⚠ Warning: In the event of a brake failure bring the vehicle to a halt as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not continue to drive.**

**⚠ If vacuum boost fails or one circuit fails the footbrake will still operate but with greater pedal pressure, increased pedal travel and longer stopping distances.**

**⚠ After a long drive over salted or gritted roads or if driving in heavy rain, through water or a vehicle wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased braking pressure may be required.**

 Vacuum boost is only available while the engine is running.

## Brake Warnings

**⚠ Warning: If the brake warning symbol comes ON, you should immediately be prepared for possible increased stopping distances and possible partial failure of the braking system.**

While driving, if the brake warning symbol  **BRAKE** comes ON, it shows either that:

- The park brake is not fully released.
- The brake pads require regular maintenance.
- The brake fluid level has fallen below an acceptable level.
- The Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system has stopped working.

 A warning message will show in the message centre (right).

Stop, as soon as possible in a safe and convenient place. Apply the footbrake and make sure that the park brake is fully released. If the park brake is fully released and the warning symbol stays ON, **do not drive** the vehicle. Contact the nearest Aston Martin Dealer. It is essential that the brake system is checked immediately, preferably by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 *Brake Noise: The high performance brake system used on this vehicle is designed to provide optimal braking under all operating conditions. However, under all driving conditions an inherent characteristic of this braking system is some brake noise. Certain combinations of speed, braking forces and ambient conditions may also cause the brakes to squeal.*

## Anti-Lock Braking System

The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) helps prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking. This also assists the driver in maintaining steering and directional stability.

If, in an emergency braking situation, the braking force applied begins to exceed the tyre to road adhesion, the ABS operates to prevent the road wheels locking. When this happens a pulsating effect is felt through the brake pedal. This is a normal ABS effect.

### Safety

In all cases it is always the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions. The fact that a vehicle is equipped with ABS must never let the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning (where the tyres are prevented from contacting the road surface by a layer of water).

The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. Possible extensions of stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand or certain heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.

If any braking system malfunction occurs, immediately have the Braking and ABS systems checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

### ABS Warning

 **Warning: If the ABS warning symbol comes ON, you should be aware that wheels could lock during extreme braking or when braking on slippery surfaces.**

ABS is monitored for correct operation while the ignition is ON. If a fault is detected, the ABS warning symbol  will come ON and the ABS will be partly or fully OFF. Normal braking will continue to function without ABS.

In the event of an ABS fault, consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

## Park Brake

**⚠ Do not rely on the park brake to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake system warning symbol is ON or flashing. Contact your Aston Martin dealer.**

The park brake on this vehicle is electric and operates in the same way as a manual parking brake. Pull the switch up to apply the park brake and push the switch down to release the park brake.

### Apply and Release the Park Brake

With the vehicle stationary, pull the park brake switch (A) up and release. The red park brake warning symbol in the instrument cluster

will come ON **(!) BRAKE** (if the ignition is ON) when the park brake is fully applied. The stop lamps will not come ON.

 When stationary the park brake can be applied at any time if not already applied.

**! The park brake operates on the rear wheels of the vehicle. Secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.**

To release the park brake the ignition control must be at position 'II'. First apply pressure to the foot brake then press down on the park brake switch and release.



### Drive Away Release

**! Do not exit the vehicle with the engine operating and the transmission in D (drive) or R (reverse). Always select P (park) before exiting the vehicle. If the transmission is left in D or R the vehicle could overcome the park brake and start to move.**

When parked with the park brake applied, select a forward or reverse gear, press the throttle pedal and the park brake will release as the vehicle moves forwards or backwards.

The park brake will not release when moving from a standstill if a vehicle door or the boot is open - in this case the park brake must be released with the park brake switch.

## Park Brake Operation While Moving

**⚠ *Driving the vehicle with the park brake applied or repeated use of the park brake to slow the vehicle can cause serious damage to the brake system.***

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling at more than 6 km/h, pull up on the park brake lever and hold to give a gradual reduction in speed. The brake warning symbol will come ON, a warning sound will be heard and CAUTION PARK BRAKE APPLIED will show in the message centre (right).

Release the switch to cancel the park brake application.

## Hill Start Assist

The hill start assist function gives assistance and safety for driving off on an incline. As you change from the brake to the accelerator pedal, the brake pressure is retained for brief a moment, the vehicle will remain stationary for long enough so you can move off without rolling back.

The hill start assist function will work on inclines of 4% and greater. On inclines of less than 4%, the park brake should be applied when stationary to prevent roll-back.

## Park Brake Faults

### Low Battery Voltage

If the battery voltage is too low, the park brake cannot be put ON or OFF. Connect an auxiliary battery if the battery voltage is too low.

### System Faults

If a fault in the system is detected, PARK BRAKE FAULT or CANNOT APPLY PARK BRAKE will show in the message centre (right). Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, APPLY FOOT AND PARK BRAKE will show in the message centre (right) when the ignition is next ON. Press the foot brake down and pull the park brake lever up to put the park brake ON, this will reset the park brake system.

## Dynamic Stability Control

**⚠ Warning:** *It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must never let the driver be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users. DSC cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.*

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is a system designed to enhance driving safety by improving the vehicle handling when the tyres are at the limits of their grip capabilities. This is achieved through the reduction of engine torque and strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

### Driver Interface and Control

**⚠** *If repair or replacement of the steering or other surrounding equipment is necessary, always refer to your Aston Martin Dealer. If the centre position of the steering deviates, the DSC system may not operate correctly because there is a sensor in the steering system which detects steering wheel position.*

**⚠** *The DSC system may not operate correctly when using tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre.*

**⚠** *Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand, tread pattern and correct size specified for this vehicle on all four road wheels. Do not mix worn tyres.*

DSC has three modes of operation:

**ON:** The DSC system sets to ON each time the engine is started. DSC is controlling engine torque and applying strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

While the DSC system operates to correct the vehicle stability the

DSC symbol , on the instrument cluster, will flash.



**TRACK MODE:** Press and hold the DSC button (A) for four seconds and release. DSC TRACK MODE SELECTED will show in the message centre (right). This raises the thresholds at which the DSC system operates. While the DSC system operates to correct the vehicle stability the DSC symbol will flash.

**OFF:** When in track mode press and hold the DSC button for four seconds and release to set the DSC to OFF. DSC OFF can not be selected from DSC on. DSC FUNCTION OFF will show in the message centre (right). DSC is no longer controlling engine torque and applying strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels. At any time while in track or off mode, press and release the DSC button to start DSC.

 *The DSC button LED will come ON when the system is set to track or off mode.*

### Fault Signs

A malfunction in the DSC control system will be shown by the following:

- The DSC symbol in the instrument cluster will come ON
- A warning message will show in the message centre (right) depending on the fault detected

## Traction Control

**⚠ Warning:** *It is always the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Traction control must never let the driver be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Traction control cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.*

Traction control is a function of DSC, and is operated in association with the DSC system. Traction control prevents excessive wheel spin at standing starts, or during acceleration. Wheel spin is usually caused by excessive use of the accelerator pedal, or slippery, loose or bumpy road surfaces.

To prevent excessive wheel spin and maintain vehicle stability in such situations the traction control system will:

- Brake either of the driven wheels when they start to slip
- And, or, adapt the engine torque to a level corresponding to the traction available on the road surface

 *These symptoms are normal and will clear as wheel spin is eliminated and normal engine power is restored.*

 *If cruise control is on it will automatically go OFF when traction control is operating.*

During operation, the DSC warning symbol will flash. The driver may experience a loss in power or temporary 'misfire' as engine power is reduced.

If traction control cuts in when driving on extended icy or slippery surfaces, reduce engine power as necessary until the DSC warning symbol goes OFF.

Traction control is always ON when DSC is ON.

## Adaptive Damping

The Adaptive Damping System (ADS) is continuously ON, adjusting the damping characteristics at all four corners, according to vehicle body movement and monitored driver inputs. Sensors on the vehicle constantly measure the vehicle body movement and driver inputs – braking, steering, vehicle speed and throttle displacement. This information is then supplied to the ADS control unit which calculates the optimal damper characteristic at each corner at any given moment.

 *ADS is independent of the DSC system.*

ADS has two modes of operation:

**Normal Mode:** At ignition ON the ADS system defaults to normal mode which gives damping characteristics for everyday driving.



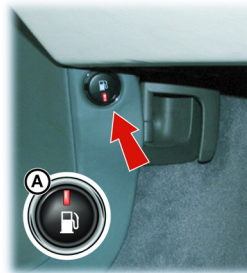
**Sport Mode:** Press and release the ADS button (A) to start sport mode, which gives damping characteristics for a firmer ride. While driving move to normal (button LED OFF) or sport (button LED ON) mode by pressing and releasing the ADS button.



## Fuel Filling

 The fuel tank filler neck has a restricted opening which will only accept the fuel supply nozzle of unleaded fuel pumps.

Press and release the fuel flap button (A) located in the centre cubby box to open the capless fuel filler flap (B). If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, use the fuel filler flap emergency release.



The fuel system will not let the fuel tank overflow but there will be times when the fuel nozzle will shut OFF prematurely. If this happens only try to fill the fuel tank one more time, continued attempts will result in fuel spillage. Wait 10 seconds before removing the refuelling nozzle.

### Emergency Fuel Fill

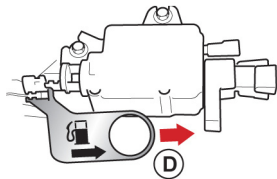
An emergency fuel fill funnel is located in the boot tool kit. It can be used to fill the fuel tank from a non standard size gerry can.

### Fuel Filler Bowl

To stop water gathering in the fuel filler bowl and flowing into the fuel tank, the fuel filler bowl has a pipe to let the water drain from the bowl. During fuel filling, check and make sure that any debris which may block the pipe is removed.

## Fuel Filler Flap Emergency Release

Remove the boot LH trim panel (C) to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Push the lever (D) towards the front of the vehicle to open the filler flap.



## Fuel Cut-OFF

In the event of a vehicle accident the vehicle electronics will enter crash mode. Power to the fuel pumps will stop, thereby reducing fire risk.

## Engine Oil Level

**! It is important to check the engine oil level regularly. Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.**

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever is the sooner.

## Catalytic Converters

**! Warning: Do not park over dry grass, leaves or other combustible material. Significant fire risk exists because of residual heat in the catalytic converters.**

**! Warning: Do not drive through deep water. Rapid cooling of catalysts may cause them to break up.**

Catalytic convertors convert harmful exhaust gasses into less noxious substances and so reduce environmental pollution. They operate at high temperatures and continue to radiate a considerable amount of heat after the ignition has been set to OFF.

Leaded fuel will cause irreparable damage to catalytic converters. If leaded fuel is inadvertently added to the fuel tank **do not start the engine, do not drive the vehicle**. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

## Reversing Camera

Option

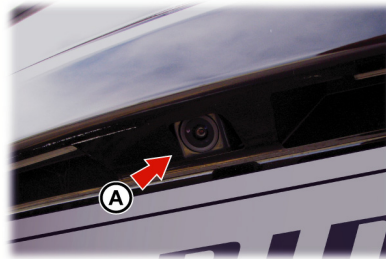
**⚠ Warning: The parking camera does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.**

**! When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.**

📖 For reliable operation, the parking camera lense in the rear bumper should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.

📖 When using a high pressure spray the parking camera lenses should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 200 mm. Do not clean the camera lenses with abrasive materials.

The rear parking camera, located in the grill on the rear bumper (A), gives a view of the rear of the vehicle as the vehicle is moved backwards while parking or reversing. When reverse gear is selected the camera view is shown on the satellite navigation screen.

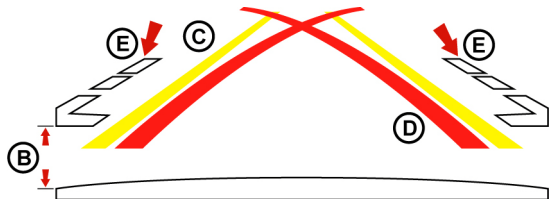


If the satellite navigation is ON when reverse gear is selected the screen will show the camera view until reverse gear is deselected.  
If the satellite navigation is OFF the screen will open when reverse gear is selected and close when reverse gear is deselected.



The rear parking camera can be set to OFF when reverse gear is selected. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Car Settings...> Enter <> .

## Camera Operation



The camera overlay shows the fixed movement angle of the rear of the vehicle with the road wheels on full lock (D (red lines)) and the actual movement of the vehicle road wheels (C (yellow lines)). As the steering wheel is turned the yellow lines will show the predicted vehicle movement.

The outer edge of the two markers (E) show the width of the vehicle including the mirrors.

The distance from the beginning edge of the two steering angle markers to the rear of the vehicle is 300 mm (B).

## Parking Assist

**⚠ Warning: Parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.**

**⚠ It is always the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.**

**⚠ Do not turn and hold the steering on full lock for any more than 10 seconds. If the steering is held on full lock for more than 10 seconds the power steering pump can fail.**

**⚠ The rear sensors are not ON when neutral is selected, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the warning sound will not be heard.**

**⚠ Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.**

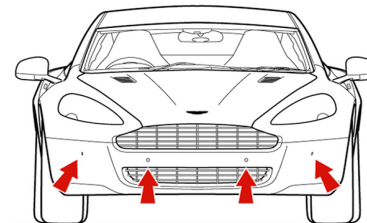
**📖** For reliable operation, the sensors in the front and rear bumpers should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.

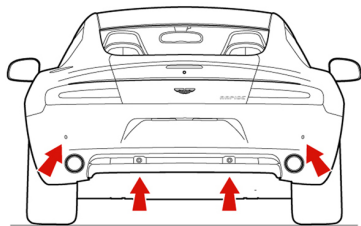
**📖** When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 200 mm. Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.

A warning will be heard when driving forwards or rearwards, if objects are detected within range of the vehicle.

### Front and Rear Parking Assist

**⚠ If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after three seconds the tone will stop. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.**





**! In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.**

The parking assist system defaults to OFF when the ignition is set to ON. The system comes ON when reverse gear is selected, or if the parking assist button (A) is pressed at speeds below 15 km/h.



The system will set to OFF when the vehicle moves forwards above 15 km/h. The parking assist button LED will come ON when the system is set to ON. The LED will flash if a fault is detected in the system.

If an obstacle is detected at the front or rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the front or rear speaker respectively, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.

The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 300 mm from the rear or 250 mm from the front of the vehicle.

If the system has a fault a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and the parking assist button LED will blink when reverse gear is selected or the ignition is set to ON. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.

**! Parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects an ultrasonic frequency using the same band as the sensors.**

**! The system consists of inner and outer sensors. When manoeuvring forward into a garage, etc., the front outer sensors will cease detection if they detect a stationary or receding object for three seconds or more, this allows detection directly at the front of the vehicle in this type of manoeuvre.**

## Reversing Camera

Optional

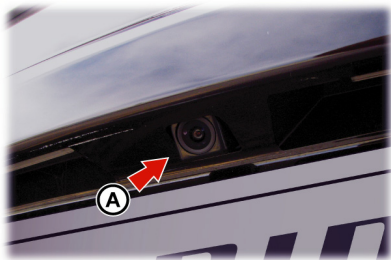
**! Warning: The parking camera does not replace the need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.**

**! It is always the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. When parking or reversing make full use of rearward and forward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.**

**! For reliable operation, the parking camera lens in the rear bumper should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.**

**! When using a high pressure spray the parking camera lens should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 600 mm. Do not clean the camera lens with abrasive materials.**

In addition to the parking assist system, a rear parking camera, located above the rear registration number plate (A), gives a view of the rear of the vehicle as the vehicle is moved backwards while parking or reversing. When reverse gear is selected the camera view is shown on the satellite navigation screen.



If the satellite navigation is ON when reverse gear is selected the screen will show the camera view until reverse gear is deselected. When reverse gear is deselected the screen will continue to show the camera view for approximately ten seconds or when the vehicle reaches a speed of 16 kph (which ever is sooner), then return to the satellite navigation screen. Press and release the **NAV** button to move between the parking camera and satellite navigation screens, at any time, while reverse is selected.

If the satellite navigation is OFF the screen will raise when reverse gear is selected and lower when reverse gear is deselected.

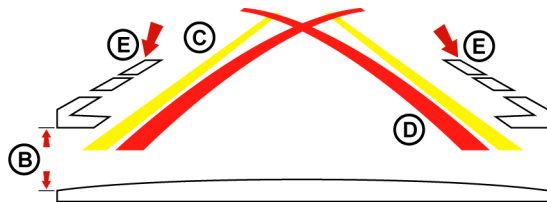


The screen can be set to not raise when reverse gear is selected if the satellite navigation system is OFF. Press **MENU** on the console and navigate to <Car Settings... > Enter <Disable Cam. if nav off>. Press **ENTER** to set the camera ON or OFF, press **BACK** to return to the previous screen(s).

If the camera is set to OFF when the satellite navigation system is OFF, press **NAV**, at any time while the transmission is in reverse gear, to raise the screen and operate the camera, if required.

At any time while in reverse gear, press and hold the **NAV** button to lower the screen, if required.

## Camera Operation



The camera overlay shows the fixed movement angle of the rear of the vehicle with the road wheels on full lock (D) red lines and the actual movement of the vehicle road wheels (C) yellow lines. As the steering wheel is turned the yellow lines will show the predicted vehicle movement.

The outer edge of the two markers (E) show the width of the vehicle including the mirrors.

The distance from the beginning edge of the two markers (E) to the rear of the vehicle is 300 mm (B).

## Rear Only Parking Assist

### Option

**⚠ Warning: Rear parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.**

**! When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.**

**! In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.**

Rear parking assist assists in detecting obstructions as the vehicle is reversed towards them. The system is ON when reverse gear is selected. When the system is operating an intermittent 'beep' signal will be heard. The 'beep' frequency increases in pitch and persistence as the vehicle reverses to an obstruction.

**📖 The 'beeps' start at approximately 1.7 m from any obstruction. The 'beep' becomes continuous at distances less than 30 cm.**

**📖 If reversing into a confined area, i.e. a home garage, the rear parking assist outer sensors will detect the side walls and, after 3 seconds, the 'Beep' sequence will stop. As reversing continues the rear parking assist inner sensors will detect the rear wall or obstruction and the 'beep' sequence will start again.**

Set parking assist to OFF by pressing the parking assist button (A) if required (button LED OFF). For reliable operation, the parking sensors should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN





# Climate Control

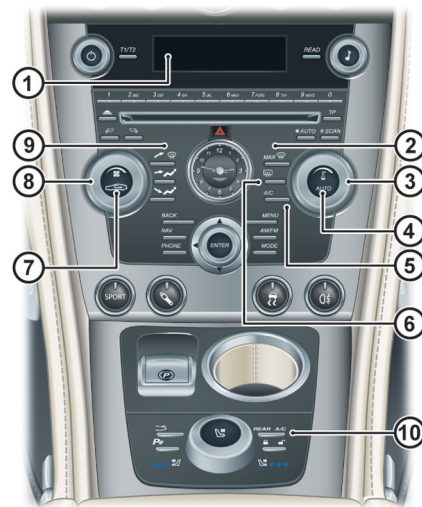
|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Operating Tips .....      | 6.2 |
| Climate Controls .....    | 6.2 |
| Airflow Modes.....        | 6.4 |
| Automatic Operation ..... | 6.5 |
| Manual Operation.....     | 6.6 |
| Rear Environment.....     | 6.7 |

## Operating Tips

- A solar sensor is installed on top of the instrument panel, this should not be covered when driving.
- The intake grille of the in-vehicle temperature sensor is located in the driver's knee bolster, close to the centre console. To maintain the optimum temperature this grille should not be obstructed.
- Moisture which forms on the evaporator in the air conditioning unit is discharged via a drain tube onto the road. After stopping, small puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not show a system malfunction.
- Operate the climate control system with the engine operating.
- Clear all obstructions like leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the front grille to improve the system efficiency.
- Windows can fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to demist the windows.
- To help demist the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air.
- Use the 'outside air' position in normal conditions. The 'recirculated air' position should be used temporarily when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling or heating of the interior.

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then close the windows and operate the climate control system.
- Operate the climate control system at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated.
- Have the climate control system checked before the weather gets hot. If the climate control system is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.
- This vehicle is equipped with a pollen filter. It is necessary to change the filter periodically as shown in the scheduled maintenance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.
- Air conditioning may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0°C (indicator stays ON even when system is OFF).

## Climate Controls



**[1] DISPLAY:** Shows options, menus and information.

**[2] AUTO:** Press for automatic climate control operation (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 6.5).

**[3] TEMPERATURE:** Set the required in vehicle temperature. Turn clockwise for hot and counterclockwise for cold. The selected temperature is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

**[4] A/C:** When in manual mode press and release to set the air conditioning ON or OFF.

**[5] HEATED REAR WINDOW:** Press to operate the rear window heater. Goes OFF after 20 minutes if not manually set to OFF. When the heated rear window is ON the door mirror heaters will work for 6.5 minutes, then go OFF.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not select recirculated air in cold or rainy weather, it can cause the interior glass to mist up.

**[6] MAX  Press for maximum defrost or demist ON or OFF. Outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started.**

**[7] FAN SPEED:** Turn to set the required fan speed (clockwise for fast speed and counterclockwise for low speed). The fan speed is shown on the **DISPLAY**

**[8] AIR CIRCULATION:** Controls the source of air entering the vehicle. Press to select recirculated air (button LED ON). Press again to select outside air as source.

Use the recirculated air position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when maximum cooling is required. On start up the default position is outside air as source. Use this position for normal conditions and demisting.

**[9] AIRFLOW:** Select the required airflow. The selected air flow mode is shown on the **DISPLAY** (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 6.5).

**[10] REAR AC:** Press and release (LED ON) to operate the rear environment climate with the front controls (rear controls locked). Control defaults back to front climate after five seconds (LED OFF) if no climate control buttons are used (rear controls unlocked). Press and hold for three seconds and release to lock or unlock the rear environment climate controls.

## Display Units

To change the **DISPLAY** units from °C to °F or °F to °C.

Press and hold in buttons 1 and 6 (A). Insert the vehicle key in the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON), then release the two buttons.

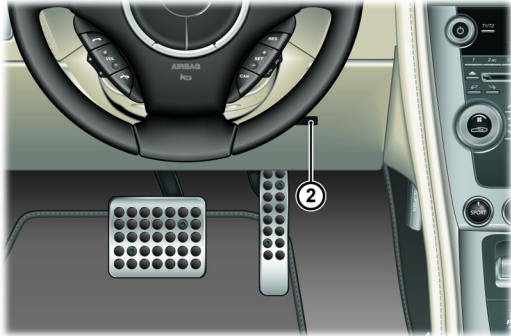
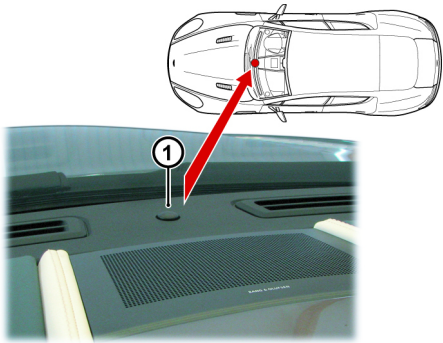


### Solar and Temperature Sensors

The automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets the interior temperature accordingly. To maintain effective operation do not obscure the following sensors:

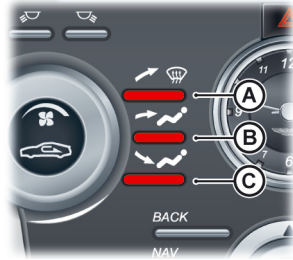
[1] : Solar sensor.

[2] : In-vehicle temperature sensor.



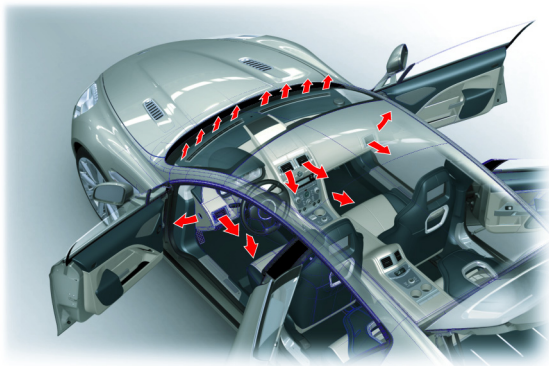
### Airflow Modes

Press and release each button for an airflow mode. By pressing one or more buttons at a time, five airflow modes are available.



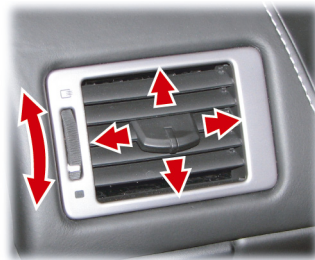
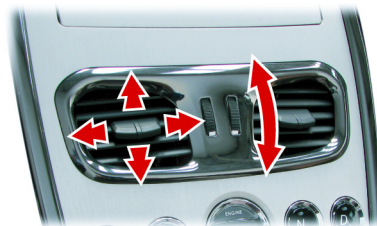
| Mode                                           | Button(s) |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Windscreen and Door Windows <sub>1</sub>       | A         |
| Face Only                                      | B         |
| Feet Only <sub>2</sub>                         | C         |
| Windscreen, Door Windows and Feet <sub>3</sub> | A+C       |
| Face and Feet                                  | B+C       |

1. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.
2. In addition a small bleed of air is directed to the face vents, the windscreen and door windows.
3. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.



## Adjusting the Vents

To adjust the air flow vents:



## Automatic Operation

Press **AUTO**. Using the **TEMPERATURE** dial set the required in-vehicle temperature (read the actual temperature setting in the top left of the **DISPLAY**). The **A/C** button LED will come ON.

Adjustments to fan speed, air flow and air re circulation will be made automatically according to the set temperature, interior and exterior conditions.

 *Maximum fan speed will not be available until the engine has reach its normal operating temperature.*

 *When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.*

 *If resetting climate control functions other than the fan speed, the fan speed will stay set as in automatic mode. Adjustments to the fan speed will cancel Auto Mode.*

## Defrost and Demist

**!** *To defrost or demist the windscreen on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, operate the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that the transmission is in P (park) and the park brake is applied.*

Press **MAX** . The outside air intake is automatically selected, the temperature is set to maximum and air conditioning is started.

 *If the engine is cold the air conditioner will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.*

To cancel automatic defrost or demist either:

- Press **MAX**  again.

or

- Press **AUTO**.

or

- Press any of the airflow mode buttons.

## Manual Operation

Set the required:

- Fan speed
- Temperature
- Air flow.

 *The fan speed and temperature setting will show on the **DISPLAY**.*

 *When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.*

 *Setting the temperature to maximum high or low will not provide the required temperature at a faster rate. To prevent cool air blowing from the vents when heating immediately after starting a cold engine, the amount of airflow is reduced until the air warms up.*

 *The vehicle heater will continue to produce the selected temperature regardless of in-vehicle conditions.*

If dehumidifying is required, press the **A/C** button (button LED ON). To stop dehumidifying press **A/C** button (button LED OFF).

When maximum cooling is required, set the **TEMPERATURE** dial to the extreme cold position and press the **AIR CIRCULATION** button to the re circulated air position ( will show in the **DISPLAY**), then set a fast fan speed.

## Defrost and Demist

**!** *To defrost or demist the windscreen on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, operate the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that the transmission is in P (park) and the park brake is applied.*

Press **A/C**. Press the   airflow button.

Set the required:

- Temperature
- Fan speed.

 *If the engine is cold the air conditioning will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.*

 *For maximum defrost or demist set the temperature and fan speed dials to maximum.*

## Rear Environment

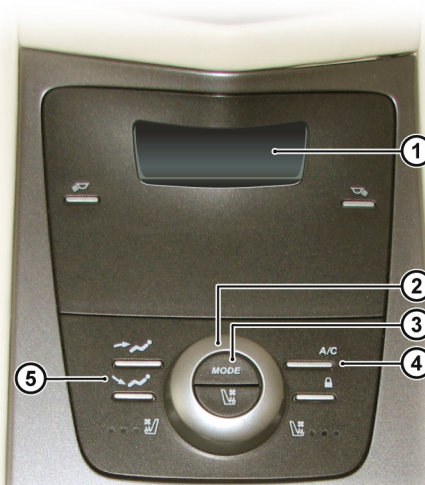
### Control of the Rear Climate

Press and release **REAR A/C** to set the rear climate from the front controls. Once pressed set the fan speed, temperature, airflow mode<sup>1</sup> and A/C for the rear environment. If no buttons are pressed, after seven seconds the control returns to the front.

Press **REAR A/C** and hold for two seconds and release to lock or unlock the rear controls. When the rear climate controls are locked the **REAR A/C** LED will show. When locked the rear controls can not be used and the interior climate is set only by the front controls.

<sup>1</sup>. Not shown on screen.

### Controls



**[1] DISPLAY:** Shows the fan speed or temperature when selected.

**[2] DIAL:** When temperature, fan speed or seat climate control buttons are selected, turn to set temperature or fan speed.

**[3] MODE:** Press and release to select temperature or fan speed. Defaults to fan speed.

**[4] A/C:** Press and release to set the rear air conditioning to ON or OFF.

**[5] AIRFLOW:** Select the required airflow.

### Operation

When the rear climate system is unlocked at the front controls, set the fan speed, temperature, air flow and A/C for the rear environment from the rear controls.

The **DISPLAY** will not show when control is from the front.

Rear air conditioning is only available when the front air conditioning is set to ON.

Maximum fan speed will not be available until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature.



Press **MODE** to select fan speed or temperature. Turn the **DIAL** to set the required fan speed (clockwise for faster and counterclockwise for slower) or temperature (clockwise for warmer and counterclockwise for cooler).

Press and release each **AIRFLOW** button to select an airflow mode. By pressing one or more buttons at a time, three airflow modes are available. When no airflow mode is selected the rear climate system sets to OFF.

 *When no airflow mode button is selected there is a small time delay before the rear system sets to OFF.*

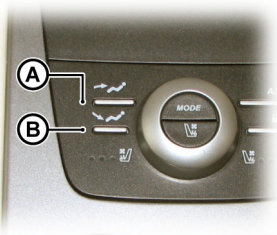
To assist the front climate control when the interior is either too warm or too cold, when the front climate system is set to either **AUTO** and maximum high or **AUTO** and maximum low temperature the rear system follows as detailed, regardless of it's current state:

 *The front climate controls must be set to maximum high or maximum low temperature.*

**Auto High:** The rear system will set to ON at maximum high temperature and fan speed, the airflow mode will be foot mode.

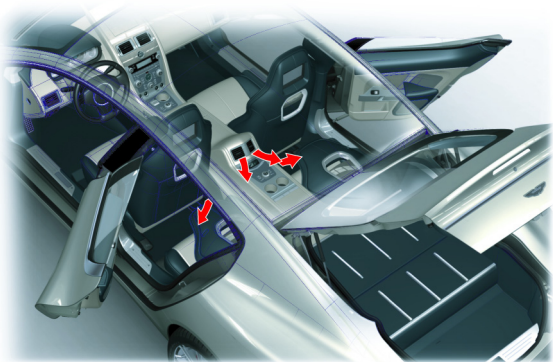
**Auto Low:** The rear system will set to ON at maximum low temperature and fan speed, the airflow mode will be face mode.

Any adjustment, during this time, to the rear climate controls will override these conditions. When front auto high or low is stopped the rear system will return its previous state.



| Mode          | Button(s) |
|---------------|-----------|
| Face Only     | A         |
| Feet Only     | B         |
| Face and Feet | A+B       |

Press **A/C** if air conditioning is required.

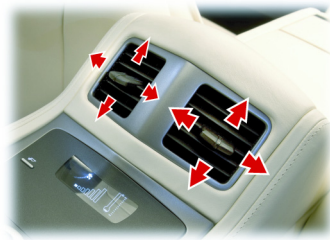




### Adjusting the Vents

To adjust the air flow vents:

 *The rear vents can not be set to OFF.*



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Audio

|                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Audio Essentials.....             | 7.2  |
| Audio Controls .....              | 7.3  |
| Radio Functions .....             | 7.6  |
| Programme Type.....               | 7.8  |
| Automatic Frequency Updating..... | 7.8  |
| Satellite Radio Functions .....   | 7.9  |
| CD Changer Functions .....        | 7.11 |
| iPod and USB Functions.....       | 7.13 |
| Auxiliary Functions.....          | 7.14 |
| RSE Functions .....               | 7.14 |
| Audio Menus .....                 | 7.16 |

## Audio Essentials

### Bang & Olufsen Audio

**Radio:** AM and FM radio<sub>1</sub>. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

**Satellite Radio<sub>2</sub>:** Satellite radio channels

**CD:** Six CD autochanger.

**iPod<sub>3</sub>:** Connection port.

**USB Device:** Connection port.

**Auxiliary Input:** Connection port.

**Rear Entertainment System Control<sub>4</sub>:** Menu system

**Power Output:** 1000W

### Speakers

**[1]** : Two 19 mm (soft dome) tweeters incorporating Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT).

**[2]** : Centre: Two speakers: One 101 mm mid-range in closed cabinet and one 19 mm (soft dome) tweeter.

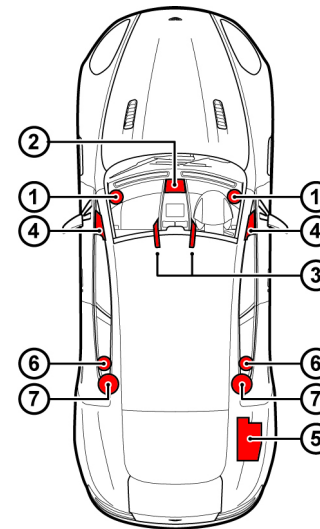
**[3]** : Footwell: Two 152 mm woofers in closed cabinets.

**[4]** : One 101 mm mid-range speaker, in closed cabinets, in each front door.

**[5]** : One 200 mm subwoofer housed in closed cabinet in the right side boot wall.

**[6]** : Two speakers, one 90 mm mid-range and one 19 mm (soft dome) tweeter, in each rear door.

**[7]** : One 152 mm woofer in each rear door.



1. Medium Wave (MW) and Long Wave (LW).

2. Option.

3. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

4. Option

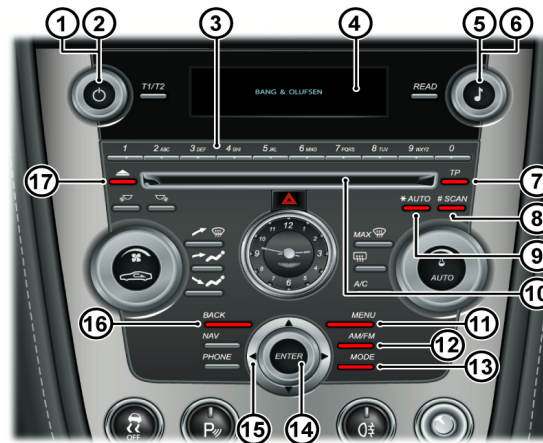
### Acoustic Lens Technology

Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT) gives a wide (180°) horizontal dispersion of high frequencies. This prevents the loss of critical sound and gives listeners an improved sense of space, staging and realism, even when not sitting in the optimal location<sup>1</sup> for listening to two-channel stereo reproductions.

Two motorised acoustic lenses, mounted on either side of the dashboard, rise when the system is set to ON and stay raised until the audio system is set to OFF.



<sup>1</sup> For the optimal location to listen to two-channel stereo reproductions, the listener should be sitting equidistant from both loudspeakers on the apex of an equilateral triangle.



[1] **ON/OFF**: Press for audio ON and OFF.

[2] **VOLUME**: Volume control.

[3] **KEYPAD**: Use the numbers as menu short cuts. Press the number corresponding to the menu number.

[4] **DISPLAY**: Shows options, menus and information.

[5] **SOUND**: Press and hold to enter sound setting mode. Press repeatedly to move through settings, turn to select. When in iPod or USB mode a press and release will enable file viewing.

[6] **TUNING**: Turn to manually search stations, change music tracks or navigate in the menus.

[7] **TP**: Not used.

[8] **SCAN**:

- **Radio**: Find and store the strongest stations.
- **Satellite Radio**: Automatic station search.
- **CD's, iPod / USB**: 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.

[9] **AUTO**:

- **Radio**: Automatic station search.
- **Satellite Radio**: Select radio text.

**[10] CD OPENING:** Insert CD's

**[11] MENU:** Opens the main menu.

**[12] AM/FM:** Press to select radio as audio source.

**[13] MODE:** Press repeatedly to select audio source.

**[14] ENTER:** Select in the menu, open a selection or open a file.

**[15] JOYSTICK:** Navigate in the menus.

- **Radio:** Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press and hold left or right to manually select a station. Press up or down to navigate in the menus or preset stations.
- **Satellite Radio:** Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press up or down to navigate in the menus or preset stations.
- **CD's:** Press left or right to move to the next or previous track. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole CD. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed.
- **iPod / USB:** Press left or right to move to the next track or previous. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed.

**[16] BACK:** Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

**[17] CD EJECT:** Press to eject CD

**[18] SCROLL:**

- **Radio:** Navigate through the preset radio stations.
- **Satellite Radio:** Navigate the channel list.
- **CD's, iPod / USB:** Navigate through the music tracks.

**[19] VOLUME:** Volume control.



## Operation

The audio system is available with the vehicle key at least in position 'I' and is available until the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

If the audio system is ON when the ignition is set to OFF and the vehicle key removed, it will automatically start the next time the vehicle key is moved to position 'I'.

Press **ON/OFF** to set the audio system ON or OFF.

When the audio system is set to ON the volume will be at the same level it was when the audio system was set to OFF.

The **JOYSTICK**, **ENTER** and **BACK** will not operate if Satellite Navigation is selected (**NAV** button LED ON) either press:

- The **NAV** button to deselect satellite navigation (**NAV** button LED OFF)
- Or press any audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**

to access controls for audio.

Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.

## Sound Source

To select radio, at any time while the audio system is ON, press the **AM/FM** button repeatedly to navigate between the radio bands.

To select other audio sound sources press the **MODE** button repeatedly to navigate through the sound source choices.

## Battery Protection Mode

Using the audio system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. A warning message will show in the message centre (right) when the battery charge is low (Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 11.27).

## Menus

The audio menu is only available when the audio system is in use. Press **MENU** to access the main menu. The menu for the current audio source (i.e. radio, CD, iPod, etc.) will be available.

## Search Path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:  
<FM Menu...> Enter <Sound settings...> Enter

Several menu options will require a cross in a box to select an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either check or uncheck the box. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

 *In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.*

## Active Sound Control

This vehicle has a speed-dependent volume feature known as Active Sound Control (ASC). This adjusts the volume automatically depending on the speed of the vehicle.

Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu, press **ENTER**. Select <Auto. volume control> Enter <Off>, <Low>, <Optimum> or <High> Enter.

 *When in RSE mode the ASC only operates through the vehicle speakers, not through the RSE headphones.*

## Original Settings

### Radio Functions

Resets all radio settings to the original factory settings: Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <Advanced radio settings...> Enter <Reset all...> Enter. Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

### Sound Settings

Resets all sound settings to the original factory settings: Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu, press **ENTER**. Select <Audio settings...> Enter <Reset all...> Enter. Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

## Bang & Olufsen Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings press and hold **SOUND**. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**. Turn the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.

### Sound Focus

The focus of the sound from the audio system can be optimised for either the driver, the driver and front passenger, the rear passengers or all front and rear passengers. Select:

 *The audio system detects seat occupancy by seat belt engagement.*

**Driver:** The focus of the sound is optimised for the driver only.

**Front:** The focus of the sound is optimised for both the driver and the front passenger.

**Rear:** The focus of the sound is optimised for both rear seat passengers.

**All:** The focus of the sound is optimised both for the front and the rear passenger(s).

**Auto:** The audio system automatically detects if driver only, driver and front passenger or a rear passenger(s) are in the vehicle.

## Other Sound Settings

**Bass:** Level for bass

**Treble:** Level for treble

**Fader:** Balance between the front and rear speakers

**Balance:** Balance between the left and right speakers

**Surround:** Level for surround sound

## Radio Functions

### Automatic Tuning

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search for the next strong station.

Press left or right again to start a new search.

 *If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.*

### Manual Tuning

There are two ways to tune into a station manually.

- Turn the **TUNING** dial to set the desired frequency.
- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right).  
The frequency rolls slowly in the selected direction and increases speed after a few seconds.

Release the button when the desired frequency shows on the **DISPLAY**. If the frequency needs adjusting, briefly touch one of the arrows.



## Storing Stations

10 stations can be stored for FM1, FM2 or AM (a total of 30 stations).

To store stations:

Tune to the desired station. Press and hold the **KEYPAD** button (0-9) where the station is to be stored. The sound will be muted for a couple of seconds and 'Station Stored' will show on the **DISPLAY**.

Select a stored station by either pressing a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or use the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

## Autostoring Stations

Up to ten AM or FM stations can be automatically tuned and stored in a separate memory.

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Start the search by pressing and holding **AUTO** (more than two seconds).

'Autostoring.' shows on the **DISPLAY** and a number of strong stations (maximum ten) from the selected frequency band are stored in the autostore memory. If there are no stations that are sufficiently strong, 'No AST Found' shows on the **DISPLAY**.

 *If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest are selected. This function is particularly useful if you are in an area in which you are unfamiliar with the radio stations and their frequencies.*

The stations are stored on the **KEYPAD** (buttons 0-9). When the radio is in autostore mode, 'Autostoring' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Return to the ordinary radio mode by pressing and releasing **AUTO** (less than 0.7 seconds). Pressing and releasing either **AUTO** or **BACK** will also cancel autostoring.

Select an Auto stored station by pressing **AUTO**, then a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

## Automatic Search for Transmitter

'PI seek' shows on the **DISPLAY** when reception is poor for the selected station. The radio automatically searches for the strongest transmission for that station. 'PI seek Back to cancel' is shown on the **DISPLAY** until the station is found.

## Scanning

Scanning automatically searches for the next strong FM or AM station signals. When the radio finds a station, scanning pauses for approximately eight seconds, after which it continues.

Select FM or AM with the **AM/FM** button.

Press **SCAN**. 'Scan' shows on the **DISPLAY** and each found station will play for approximately eight seconds. Press **SCAN** or **BACK** to accept the station.

 *If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.*

## Programme Type

Use the Programme Type (PTY) function to select between the various programme types.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <Show PTY> Enter.

When ON the station's programme type will be shown on the **DISPLAY**, e.g. Current affairs, Information, Drama, Rock music, etc.

 Not all radio stations have a PTY designation.

### Searching for a Specific PTY

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <PTY...>. Press **ENTER** for one or more of the listed programme types.

The PTY symbol on the **DISPLAY** comes ON when the first selection is made and the radio is set to stand-by for PTY.

Press **BACK** to go back.

Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <Search PTY> Enter.

If the radio finds a station with the selected programme type, this is played.

If a station with the selected programme type can not be found, the **DISPLAY** shows 'No Station Found' and the radio returns to the previous frequency.

PTY is then on stand-by until the selected programme type is broadcast. When this happens, the radio automatically selects the station broadcasting the programme type.

### Clear All PTY

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <Clear all PTY...> Enter.

The PTY symbol is removed from the **DISPLAY** and the radio returns to normal mode.

## Automatic Frequency Updating

The Automatic Frequency (AF) Updating function is normally ON and makes sure that the radio tunes to the strongest available transmitter.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <Advanced radio settings...> Enter <AF> Enter.

When ON 'AF' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

## Satellite Radio Functions

### SIRIUS ID

The SIRIUS ID is required when contacting the SIRIUS Call Centre. It is used to start your account and when making any account transactions. The SIRIUS ID is sometimes referred to as the Electronic Serial Number (ESN).

To access the 12 digit SIRIUS ID: Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Sirius ID> Enter.

### Selecting Satellite Radio Mode

Press **ON/OFF** to set the audio system ON. Press **MODE** repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2.

### Activating Satellite Radio

Tune to a satellite channel that has no audio, which means that the channel is unsubscribed and the text 'Call \*\*\*-\*\*\*-SIRIUS to Subscribe' is shown.

Call SIRIUS:

**North America:** 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).

**Canada:** 1-866-635-9632

When asked for the SIRIUS ID number press **AUTO** to display this number.

'Updating Subscription' will be shown while the subscription is being updated, after which the **DISPLAY** will return to the normal view.

### Channels

#### Selecting a Channel Category

With audio ON, press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2. Press **ENTER** to access the song category menu.

Using the **JOYSTICK** navigate through the list of categories and press **ENTER** to select a category. Move left or right to select a channel. Audio starts after a few seconds.

 The category 'All' is default, which lets you to navigate through the entire list of available satellite channels.

 Channel categories are automatically updated several times a year. This takes approximately two minutes and will interrupt normal broadcasting. A message will be shown while updating is in progress. Information on channel or feature updates is available at [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com).

### Selecting a Channel

There are three ways of tuning in a channel:

- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **SCROLL** button. The scrolling function begins slowly and increases speed after approximately 5 seconds. Release to listen to the currently tuned channel.
- Turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate through the available channels.
- Through direct channel entry.

#### Direct Channel Entry

The SIRIUS satellite channels are numbered consecutively throughout all of the categories.

To access a channel directly:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Direct channel entry> Enter.

Use the **KEYPAD** to enter the channel's number. Press **ENTER**. The radio will tune to this channel, even if it belongs to a category other than the currently selected one.

The numbers of skipped or locked channels will not be shown. If a channel is locked, the access code must be entered before the channel can be selected.

## Scanning

Press **SCAN** to automatically search through the list of satellite channels.

## Storing a Channel

A total of 20 satellite channels can be stored; 10 channels each for SAT 1 and 2. A long press on one of the **KEYPAD** numbers stores the currently tuned channel on that key. Pressing on a **KEYPAD** number while the radio is in SAT 1 or 2 mode will tune to the preset satellite channel stored on that button, regardless of the currently selected channel category.

## Song Seek and Song Memory

The song seek and song memory functions provide both audio and visual notification when SIRIUS is broadcasting your favourite songs. Song seek lets you to store the name of the song for future advance notification when that song is being played. The song memory feature makes it possible to view all of the current songs that are stored in memory.

## Song Memory

Up to ten songs can be saved in the system's memory. When the song is playing press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Add song to song mem> Enter*. If a new song is selected when the memory is full, a prompt to erase the last song on the list will show. Press **ENTER** to erase the last song on the list. The remaining songs in the list will move down one position, and the newly added song will be placed at the top of the list.

## View Song Memory List

Press **MENU**. Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Song memory> Enter*. Scroll through the song list using the **JOYSTICK**<sub>1</sub>. Press the **TUNING** dial twice to erase the song if required.

## Song Seek

When a satellite radio channel plays one of the songs stored in the song memory, the listener will be alerted by a text message and an audible signal. Press **ENTER** to listen to the song or **EXIT** to cancel.

To set the song seek function ON or OFF:

Press **MENU**. Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Song seek> Enter*. When the song has ended, the radio will stay tuned to the channel on which the song was played.

## Radio Text

The type of text information shown about the song currently playing can be changed. Use the **AUTO** button or the menu to show the artist, title, composer, or set radio text to OFF.

## Skip Options

This function is used to remove a channel from the list of available channels.

## Skip Current Channel

Press **MENU**> Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Skip options> Enter <Channel Skip List> Enter*. Select a category in the list and press **ENTER**. Skip channels in the list by pressing **ENTER**.

---

<sub>1</sub>. The **TUNING** dial can also be used.

### Unskip all Channels

This permanently removes all channels from the skip list and makes them available for selection. Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Skip options> Enter <Channel Unskip all channels> Enter.

### Temporally Unskip all Channels

This function will temporarily unskip all channels and make them available for selection. The channels stay on the skip list and will again be skipped the next time the ignition is set to ON. Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Skip options> Enter <Temporally Unskip all Ch.> Enter.

### Change Code

This function makes it possible to change the channel access code. The default code is 0000. To change the code: Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Lock options> Enter <Change Code> Enter. Enter the current code and press **ENTER**. Enter the new code and press **ENTER**. Confirm the new code and press **ENTER**. If an incorrect code is entered, the INCORRECT CODE! is shown in the **DISPLAY**.

### View Access Code

If the access code has been forgotten: Press **MENU**> Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Sirius ID> Enter. Press and hold **ENTER** for two seconds. The current code will be shown.

## CD Changer Functions

### Loading CDs

 **Use only 12 cm. CDs. Do not use CDs with adhesive disc labels. The heat from the CD player can cause the label to come loose from the disc. The CD player could be damaged.**

 **Do not use CDs that are warped or look warped (critical measurement for CD warp is 0.7 mm - anything more than this may cause problems). The CD player will not be able to hold the CD correctly (because of the warp), this may cause a jam in the CD player.**

 If the quality of the CD does not comply with the requirements of standard EN60908 or if it has been recorded using poor equipment, sound quality may be poor or playback interrupted.

The CD changer can hold up to six discs.

Press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select CD. Select an empty position using the **KEYPAD** (buttons 1 to 6) or use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The **DISPLAY** shows which positions are empty. Make sure that 'Insert disc' is shown then insert a new disc.

## Selecting a CD

Select the CD to play using **KEYPAD** buttons 1-6 or the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The number of the disc and track are shown on the **DISPLAY**.

## Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), the **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track. The track number is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

## Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search forwards or backwards within a track or the whole disc. Searching continues for as long as the button is depressed.

## Random Play

Plays tracks from a CD or CDs in random order.

Press **MENU**> Navigate to <CD Menu...> Enter <Random...> Enter. Select <Off>, <Single disc> or <All discs> Enter for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all CDs.

RND or RND ALL is shown on the **DISPLAY** while the function is ON. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

Press **BACK** to cancel random play.

## Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play a track.

## Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Start play again by turning the volume up.

## Disc Text - ON or OFF

Some CDs have title information. The information is shown as text on the **DISPLAY**.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <CD Menu...> Enter <Disc text> Enter.

If information is stored on the disc, this is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

## Ejecting one CD

Press **EJECT**.

 For traffic safety reasons, the CD stays out for 12 seconds. The player will then draw back in the disc and set to pause mode. Press CD to start the player.

## Ejecting all CDs

Press and hold **EJECT** (for longer than two seconds). The entire magazine is emptied, CD by CD. 'Eject all' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

This function can only be used when the vehicle is stationary and is interrupted if the vehicle starts to move. For traffic safety reasons, the ejected CD stays out for 12 seconds. It must then be removed, or the function is cancelled.

## iPod and USB Functions

### iPod and USB Connection

 *The iPod port is compatible with generation three iPods onwards.*

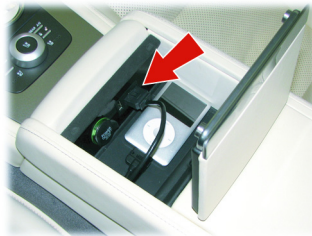
 *The USB port is only compatible with USB storage devices, e.g. Memory Sticks.*

 *On initial connection and on every engine start the system will synchronise with the connected device. This will take a short while to complete.*

 *The iPod controls will not operate while connected to the vehicle audio system. All functionality will be from the vehicle audio system.*

Locate the iPod cable or the USB socket in the armrest cubby box and connect the:

- iPod player cable to the iPod cable.
- USB device to the USB port.



If not already ON, set the audio system to ON. Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until either 'iPod' or 'USB' shows on the **DISPLAY**.

The iPod or USB device can now be operated by the audio system.

### Playing Tracks

Once the mode has been set to either iPod or USB play automatically starts.

### Selecting Tracks

Press **ENTER** to show the music folder list. Using the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **TUNING** dial navigate through the folder list or music tracks. Press **ENTER** to open a folder or play a track.

### Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Start play by turning the volume up.

### Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the **JOYSTICK** is held.

### Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), or the **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track.

### Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play the required track.

### Random

Plays tracks from the music folder(s) in random order.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <iPod Menu...> or <USB Menu...> Enter <Random...> Enter. Select <Off>, <Folder> or <All> Enter for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all music folders.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown in the **DISPLAY** while the function is ON.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or the **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

### RDS Radio Stations

News broadcasts (NEWS) and traffic information (TP) are also available when in USB or iPod mode. Refer to iPod and USB menus.

## Auxiliary Functions

### Audio Device Connection

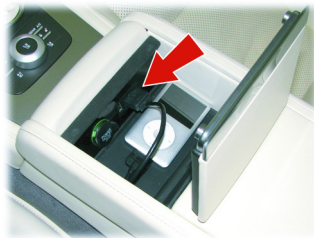
The auxiliary input socket is provided to connect audio devices which can not be connected using the iPod or USB connections.

 *Only volume control will be available from the vehicle audio system. All other functionality will be from the audio device.*

Locate the auxiliary socket in the front armrest cubby box. Connect the audio device to the auxiliary socket using a suitable cable.

If not already ON, set the audio system to ON. Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until AUX shows on the **DISPLAY**.

The media device will now play through Infotainment system.



### Audio Device Volume

The vehicle audio system volume can be set at a higher or lower starting volume for the audio device.

Press **MENU**> Navigate to <AUX menu...> Enter <AUX input volume...> Enter. Turn the **TUNING** dial to set the volume level.

Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display.

## RSE Functions

Optional

### RSE Operation

 **Warning:** *The driver should make adjustments only when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.*

 *When the RSE menu (<Rear screen entertainment...>) is selected in the infotainment centre audio menu the RSE remote control is locked. De-select the RSE menu in the infotainment centre to use the remote control.*

Supervisory control of the RSE system is from the audio menu. The RSE system, remote control and each rear screen can be set to ON or OFF using the audio menu. This lets the driver or front seat passenger select the media source and control volume level for each screen and censor DVD viewing. Each screen is set and controlled independently.

All system screen settings are adjusted using the remote control.

Press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select <RSE>. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...>. Press **ENTER** to access the RSE menu.



The following can be set to ON or OFF:

**RSE:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <System on>.

**Remote Control:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <Remote control on>.

**Rear Screens:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <Right system on> or <Left system on>. Select left or right system and press **ENTER**.

**Headphone Audio:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <Headphones on>.

When RSE <System on> is selected the DVD screen can be set to ON or OFF. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Screen enabled> Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen. Press the **JOYSTICK** left or right for the right or left screen. Each screen must be set independently. When in the audio system is in RSE mode the audio playing on the left RSE system screen is heard through the vehicle speakers. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select right or left screen.

 When RSE is selected the default screen is left.

## DVD Play

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <Left system > or <Right system> Enter <Video source> Enter <DVD> Enter <Disk selection...> Enter <Disk 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6>.

 Only one DVD can be view at a time, on one or both screens.

## Audio

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <Left system > or <Right system> Enter <Audio source> Enter. Select <Radio>, <CD player>, <Radio>, <CD player>, <SR1>, <AUX>, <SR1> or <RSE> Enter. Repeat for the second screen if required.

When <Radio>, <CD player>, <Radio>, <CD player>, <SR1>, <AUX> or <SR1> is selected the rear passengers can listen to the vehicle audio system through the headphones. The rear passengers can not change any settings and only have control over the volume level using the headphones.

Any change to the audio source settings, for example changing tracks or radio station, must be completed through the infotainment centre. When the driver or front passenger has made changes to the audio source selected for the RSE they can return to their audio choice though the infotainment centre.

## Audio Video Devices

With <AV1> or <AV2> selected the rear passengers can listen and view media from external devices and play video games on games consoles (Refer to 'Auxiliary Connections', page 8.12).

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> Enter <Left system > or <Right system> Enter <Video source> Enter <AV1> or <AV2> Enter. Repeat for the second screen if required.

# Audio Menus

## Radio Menu

### 1) FM Menu...

- 1) News
- 2) PTY...
  - 1) Select PTY...
  - 2) Search PTY
    - 1) Clear all PTY...
    - 2) Select PTY station
  - 3) Show PTY (ON or OFF)
- 3) Radio text
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Auto. volume control...

### 2) AM Menu...

- 1) Sound settings...
- 2) Auto. volume control...

## Satellite Radio

### 1) SIRIUS Menu...

- 1) Add song to memory
- 2) Direct channel entry
- 3) SIRIUS radio text
- 4) Song seek
- 5) Advanced SIRIUS settings...
  - 1) Song memory
  - 2) Skip options
    - 1) Channel skip list
    - 2) Unskip all channels
    - 3) Temporally unskip all channels
  - 3) Lock options
    - 1) Channel lock list
    - 2) Unlock all channels
    - 3) Temporally unlock all channels
    - 4) Change code
  - 4) SIRIUS ID
- 6) Audio settings...
  - 1) Surround SIRIUS
  - 2) Equaliser...
  - 3) Auto. volume control...
  - 4) Reset all
- 7)

## CD Changer Menu

### 1) CD Menu...

- 1) Play list
- 2) Random...
  - 1) Off
  - 2) Single disc
  - 3) All discs
- 3) Disc text
- 4) Auto. volume control...

## iPod and USB Menu

### 1) iPod Menu... or USB Menu...

- 1) Playlist...
- 2) Random...
  - 1) Off
  - 2) Folder
  - 3) All
- 3) Track Information
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Auto. volume control...

---

## Auxiliary Menu

### 1) AUX Menu...

- 1) AUX input volume...
- 2) Sound settings...
- 3) Auto. volume control...

---

## RSE Menu

### When the audio system in RSE mode:

- 1) Rear seat entertainment
  - 1) System on
  - 2) DVD selection...
  - 3) Right system...
  - 4) Left system...
  - 5) Remote control locked
  - 6) Disable rear screen
  - 7) Headphone audio on
- 2) RSE main audio...
- 8) Sound Settings...
- 3) Auto. volume control...
- 4) Reset all...

### When the audio system is not in RSE mode:

- 1) Audio source menu...
- 2) Rear seat entertainment...
  - 1) System on
    - 1) Right system...
    - 2) System on
  - 2) Left system...
    - 1) System on
- 3) Remote control locked

---

## When 'System on' is selected:

- 1) DVD menu...
  - 1) DVD selection...
- 2) Right system...
  - 1) System on
  - 2) Screen enabled
- 3) Video source
  - 1) DVD...
  - 2) AV1
  - 3) AV2
- 4) Audio source...
  - 1) Radio
  - 2) CD player
  - 3) AUX
  - 4) iPod
- 3) Left system...



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Rear Seat Entertainment

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Introduction .....              | 8.2  |
| Disc Player Magazine .....      | 8.3  |
| Rear Seat Entertainment .....   | 8.4  |
| Supervisory Control .....       | 8.5  |
| Rear Passenger Control .....    | 8.6  |
| To Set the RSE ON and OFF ..... | 8.8  |
| System Settings .....           | 8.8  |
| RSE Media Source .....          | 8.9  |
| Auxiliary Connections .....     | 8.12 |
| Headphones .....                | 8.12 |
| Rear Seat Entertainment .....   | 8.14 |
| Troubleshooting .....           | 8.14 |



ASTON MARTIN

RAPIDES

## Introduction

The Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system consists of two screens (mounted in the rear of the front seat head restraints) an infotainment menu system, a six DVD or CD player, audio headphones and a remote control. The rear seat passengers can watch or listen to separate programmes or audio on each screen or use games consoles.



The player will play 12 cm DVDs, Video CDs (VCDs) and audio CDs. The player is not compatible with High Definition DVD discs, DVD-ROMs, DVD-RAMs, Photo CDs or MP3.

 *Video CDs will have less options available from their menus.*

### Safety Information

** Warning: The screen glass on the LCD display may break when hit with a hard surface. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with skin, wash immediately with soap and water.**

- Read all of the safety and operating instructions before operating the RSE.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the disc player.
- Do not expose the LCD screen to direct sunlight or intensive ultraviolet rays for extensive periods of time. Ultraviolet rays deteriorate the liquid crystal.
- Be sure to review user manuals for video games and video game equipment when used as auxiliary inputs in the RSE.
- Do not operate video games or video equipment if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged.
- Carefully place cords or cables where they will not be stepped on or interfere with the operation of seats or compartments.
- Disconnect game consoles power cords or cables when not in use
- Avoid touching auxiliary input jacks with your fingers. Do not blow on them or allow them to get wet or dirty.
- Do not clean any part of the disc player with benzene, paint thinner or any other solvent.

### Headphones

Audio for the RSE can be delivered to the user via infra red (cordless) headphones. Volume is controlled from the headphones.

### Auxiliary and Portable Audio

Input points are supplied for audio video devices (AV1, AV2) and also portable audio devices such as iPods and music players.

### Regional Coding

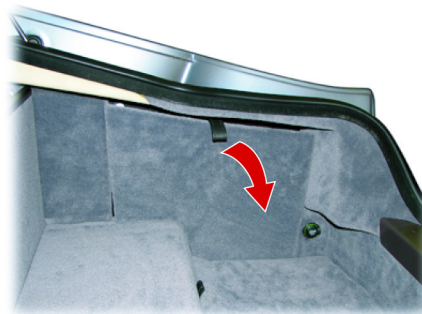
Both the DVD player and DVD discs are coded by region. These regional codes must match in order for the disc to play. If the codes do not match, the disc will not play. Other regional codes cannot be played in this unit. The unit will show REGION CODE VIOLATION.

## Disc Player Magazine

**⚠ Do not leave the disc player door in the open position. If dirt or moisture enter the player this can reduce playback quality, and can result in damage to the player.**

The player is located behind the boot RH wall trim panel. To load or eject a disc:

1. Slide the player door fully open and press the **EJECT** button.
2. Remove the magazine and put in or eject a disc(s) into, with the label side facing upwards, or out of the magazine.
3. Place the magazine into the player and fully close the sliding door.



Do not place any device or object that emits a magnetic field near to the player.

Do not put in any object other than the recommended discs into the player for any reason.

Make sure that the discs are clean and dust free before inserting into the player.

 This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain US patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorised by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorised by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

## Rear Seat Entertainment

### Care of Disc Multi-Changer Player

#### Environment Extremes

Disc players which are subjected to harsh environmental conditions may be damaged or perform at less than maximum capability. To avoid these outcomes, whenever possible avoid exposing your disc player to:

- Extremely hot or cold temperatures
- Direct sunlight
- High humidity
- A dusty environment
- Locations where strong magnetic fields are generated

#### Humidity and Moisture Condensation

Moisture in the air will condense in the disc player under extremely humid conditions or when moving from a cold place to a warm one. Moisture condensation may cause damage to the disc or player. If moisture condensation occurs, do not insert a disc into the player. If one is already in the player, remove it. Set the disc player to ON to dry the moisture before inserting a disc. This could take an hour or more.

### Federal Communication Commission (FCC) Compliance

Changes or modifications not approved by Aston Martin could void user's authority to operate the equipment. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference and radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to consult the dealer or an experienced radio / TV technician for help.

### Temperature

When the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight or in an extremely cold place for a long period of time, wait until the cabin temperature of the vehicle is at normal temperature before operating the system.

### Foreign Substances

Exercise care to prevent dirt and foreign objects from entering the disc player compartment. Be especially careful not to spill liquids of any kind onto the media controls or into the system. If liquid is accidentally spilled onto the system, immediately set the system to OFF and consult a qualified service technician.

### Cleaning the Display

Clean the display screen by using a damp soft cloth. Rub the screen gently until the dust, dirt or fingerprints are removed. Do not spray the screen directly with water or glass cleaning solvents. Over spray from these fluids could drip down into the internal electronics of the screen and cause damage. Do not apply excessive pressure while cleaning the screen.



## Supervisory Control

### Cleaning Discs

Inspect all discs for contamination before playing. If necessary, clean discs only with an approved disc cleaner and wipe from the centre out to the edge. Do not use circular motion.

### Cleaning the Disc Player

Clean the exterior of the disc player with a damp cloth. Do not use disc cleaning kits or discs intended to clean the interior of your disc player. Use of these products may damage your system.

**⚠ The driver should make adjustments only when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.**

Supervisory control of the RSE system is from the infotainment menu system. The RSE system, remote control, headphones and each rear screen can be set to ON or OFF using the infotainment menu system. Each screen is set and controlled independently.

When the RSE menu (<Rear screen entertainment...>) is selected in the infotainment centre audio menu the remote control is locked. The RSE menu will time-out after one minute or de-select the RSE menu in the infotainment centre to use the remote control.

All system screen settings are adjusted using the remote control.

Press the **MODE** (A) button repeatedly to select <RSE>.

Press **MENU** (B) and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...>.

Press **ENTER** to access the RSE menu.

The following can be set to ON or OFF:



When RSE <System on> is selected the DVD screen can be set to ON or OFF. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Screen enabled>.

Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

Press the **JOYSTICK** left or right for the right or left screen. Each screen must be set independently.

**RSE:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <System on>.

**Remote Control:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <Remote control on>.

**Rear Screens:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <Right system on> or <Left system on>. Select left or right system and press **ENTER**.

**Headphone Audio:** Navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <Headphones on>.

When in the audio system is in <RSE> mode the audio playing on the left RSE system screen is heard through the vehicle speakers. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select right or left screen.

## DVD Play

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <Video source> (Enter) <DVD> (Enter) <Disk selection...> (Enter) <Disk 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6>.

 Only one DVD can be view at a time, on one or both screens.

## Audio

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <Left system > or <Right system> (Enter) <Audio source> (Enter). Select the audio source. Repeat for the second screen if required.

When the audio source is selected the rear passengers can listen to the vehicle audio system through the headphones. The rear passengers can not change any settings and only have control over the volume level using the headphones.

Any change to the audio source settings, for example changing tracks or radio station, must be completed through the infotainment centre. When the driver or front passenger has made changes to the audio source selected for the RSE they can return to their audio choice though the infotainment centre.

## Auxiliary Devices

With <AV1> or <AV2> selected the rear passengers can listen and view media from external devices and play video games on games consoles (Refer to 'Auxiliary Connections', page 8.12).

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <Left system > or <Right system> (Enter) <Video source> (Enter) <AV1> or <AV2> (Enter). Repeat for the second screen if required.

## Rear Passenger Control

The rear seat passengers can operate the RSE system by using the remote control. Separate display modes and media sources for each screen can be selected using the switch on the rear of the remote control to select left and right screens. All screen settings are adjusted with the remote control.

## Remote Control

### Front View

**[1] ON/OFF:** Press and release to for ON / OFF.

**[2] LEVEL SET:** Press to raise or lower the set level

**[3]  Press and release to pause. Press again to stop play.**

**[4] DISP.:** Press repeatedly to view the setup menus.

**[5] DVD MENU:** Shows the DVD menu.

**[6] JOYSTICK:** DVD menu control. Move left, right, up, or down the menu. Press to confirm selection.

**[7] RTN:** Press to return to the previous CD or DVD menu.

**[8] VIDEO MODE:** Press to change video mode. DVD, AV1 and AV2.

**[9] **: Not used.

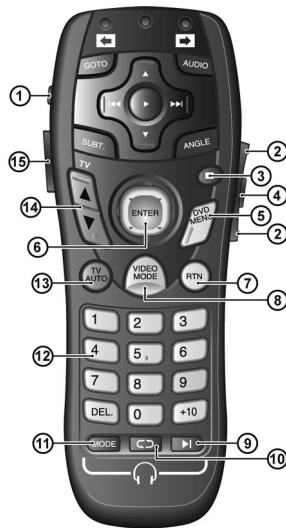
**[10] **: Not used.

**[11] MODE:** Radio, HD radio, CD, USB, RSE audio selector. Long press for AUX selection.

**[12] KEYPAD:** Press to select DVD chapters or CD tracks.

**[13] TV AUTO:** Not used.

**[14] TV:** Not used.



**[15] LIGHT:** Press to illuminate the controls.

**[16] GOTO:** Chapter selection and DVD status.

**[17] ▲:** Next disc up.

**[18] AUDIO:** DVD audio options.

**[19] ►►:** Seek forward and fast forward.

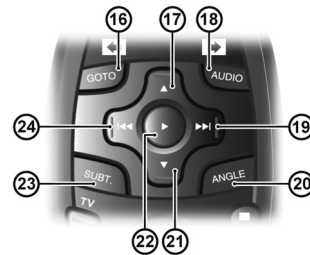
**[20] ANGLE:** DVD viewing angle options.

**[21] ▼:** Next disc down.

**[22] ►:** Play and pause.

**[23] SUBT.:** DVD subtitle options.

**[24] ◀◀:** Seek backward and fast backward.



**[25] SCREEN SWITCH:** On the rear of the remote control. In the centre position the remote control is locked. Press to the left or right and press the **ON/OFF** button to set the left or right system to ON or OFF. Press down to set the screen OFF or ON.

 Only the screen is set to OFF, the audio signal continues unless another source is selected.



## To Set the RSE ON and OFF

**!** *Always operate the engine during prolonged use of the RSE system. If the engine is not operating while the RSE is in use the vehicle battery can become discharged.*

The RSE system is available with the vehicle key at least in position 'I' and is available until the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

The RSE system defaults to OFF on each ignition OFF.

**!** *If the ignition is set to OFF but set back to position 'I' within 50 seconds the RSE system will automatically start from the point it was set to OFF.*

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Rear screen entertainment...> (Enter) <System on> (Enter).

When the RSE system and remote control have been set to ON using the front supervisory menu, move the **SCREEN SWITCH** on the back of the remote control to the left or right (left or right screen) and press the **ON/OFF** button to set the left or right screen to ON. Move the switch to the left or right and press the **ON/OFF** button for the second screen if required.

Press the **ON/OFF** button again to set each screen to OFF as required.

**!** *When a screen is set to ON the last used audio or video source for that screen will play. If that source is a DVD it will resume play at the point it was left at when last set to OFF.*

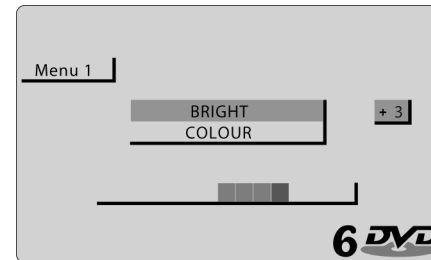
- Always set the RSE system to OFF when not in use.
- Press the **EJECT** button to eject the disc, even when the RSE system is OFF.
- If the player is set to OFF before the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control, the player will return to the same point in the movie when set to ON again.

## System Settings

Use the setup screen to configure the system and adjust the picture quality.

1. Press **DISP.** to access the first setting options. Press the button repeatedly to scroll through further options.
2. When the required option is highlighted the level can be adjusted or options can be selected. Use the **LEVEL SET** buttons to adjust the set level up or down or to make a selection.
3. Press the **DISP.** button again to exit the setup menu.

The setup screen will set to OFF after two second if no buttons are pressed.



Menu options:

**BRIGHT:** Screen Brightness

**COLOUR:** Screen Colour

**DIMMER (AUTO, DAY and NIGHT):** Day is the brightest setting.  
Night is the lowest setting.

**DIMMER LEVEL:** Fine tune Day and Night settings

**DISPLAY MODE:** The screen aspect ratio can be adjusted to suit the video media being viewed. Press **ENTER** to confirm your selection.

**[A] 16:9:** Wide-screen

**[B] 4:3:** Commonly used for TV

**[C] CINEMA:** Used for films produced for cinema release

**[D] ZOOM:** Slightly wider than Cinema setting

**[E] NTSC/PAL: [A] AUTO:** The system automatically selects the correct video format.

**[B] NTSC:** (National Television System Committee) Format used in North America.

**[C] PAL:** (Phase Alternating Line) Format used in other countries around the world.

**RESET TO DEFAULT:** All on screen display settings will revert to their default settings.

## RSE Media Source

 When the RSE menu (<Rear screen entertainment...>) is selected in the infotainment centre audio menu the remote control is locked. De-select the RSE menu in the infotainment centre to use the remote control.

## Disc Media Source

To select a video source press **VIDEO MODE**. Press repeatedly to scroll through the available video sources

**DVD:** Play DVDs, VCDs and CDs. Only one disc can be played at a time for one or two screens.

**AV1 or AV2:** External devices to be used by the left or right rear seat passengers.

## DVD Play

To start DVD play press and release ►. Press and release again to pause play (DVD still shows). Press and release again to start play.

Press and release ■ to pre-stop play (DVD not shown). Press and release again to end play (DVD will start from the beginning).

To seek forward and backwards by chapters press ►► (forwards) and ◄◄ (backwards). For fast operation at x16 speed, press and hold.

To move to the next or previous disc press ▲ or ▼.

📖 *Play will start automatically when the next or previous disc is selected.*

Press and release the **DVD MENU** button to access the DVD menu. Use the **JOYSTICK** to select an option and press **ENTER** to select. Press and release **DVD MENU** again to return to the DVD.

📖 *If an attempt is made to enter a command that is either not available on the disc currently playing, or a command which is available but not at that time, a no entry symbol will appear in the top right corner of the display screen.*

📖 *The features available from the DVD menu will vary for each DVD. Refer to the instructions supplied on screen for more information.*



## DVD Special Features

Some DVD discs are recorded with additional features that allow subtitles to be displayed, camera angle to be changed and audio choices to be made. If these features are available they can be accessed using the **DVD MENU** button. The dedicated feature buttons **GOTO**, **ANGLE**, **SUBT.** and **AUDIO**, can be pressed to access the same features.

**<GOTO>**: Some DVDs offer title, chapter and time information. Press the **GOTO** button to scroll through the available options.

Use **GOTO** to access a point within the DVD programme, e.g., select chapter to show a chapter selection pop up. Using the **KEYPAD** enter a chapter number (+10 and 6 = chapter 16) then press the **ENTER** button. A long press of the **GOTO** button will show the DVD status information. A second long press will show the previous screen.

**<ANGLE>**: Some DVDs offer alternative viewing angles in selected scenes. Press the **ANGLE** button to scroll through the available options.

**<SUBT.>**: Press the **SUBT.** button to scroll through the available options. Subtitles will show along the bottom of the screen. To set subtitles to OFF apply a long press of the **SUBT.** button.

**<AUDIO>**: Some DVDs have an alternative or extra sound feature such as a commentary. Press the **AUDIO** button to scroll through the available options. The selections appear as AUDIO 1 and AUDIO 2.



### Audio Video Play

The RSE system will accept an external audio or video device. The audio or video device could be a game console, video camera, personal audio or video players, or other input device. When the external device is connected refer to the device manufactures instructions. Connect the device through the auxiliary jacks located in the rear cubby box (Refer to 'Auxiliary Connections', page 8.12).

### Audio CD Play

To start CD play press and release ►. Press and release ■ to stop play.

To select the next track press ►► and to select a previous track press ◄◄. To fast forward or backwards press and hold.

To move to the next or previous disc press ▲ or ▼.

Press and release the **DVD MENU** button to access the CD menu. Use the **JOYSTICK** to select a track and press **ENTER** to select. Press and release **DVD MENU** again to return to the CD. If there is more than one page press the **JOYSTICK** left or right. Press **RTN** to view all music folders on the CD.

When playing an audio CD, the **DISPLAY** shows the current track playing, the total playing time of the track, the total playing time of the disc and the elapsed time of the track.

### Audio Media

To select an audio source press **MODE** repeatedly to scroll through the audio sources. When the required source is shown play will commence.

Audio modes, Radio, CD, USB or AUX play media through the vehicle audio system. Control of these audio sources remains with the vehicle audio system. To select a radio station, CD AUX device function, etc. the vehicle audio system must be set to the mode the RSE system has selected. Once set the vehicle audio can return to another audio source.

## Auxiliary Connections

**⚠ Warning: Loose objects within the passenger compartment can cause death or injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking. Make sure that all auxiliary input devices are securely installed in position.**

**⚠ Auxiliary input devices can generate heat whilst operating. Do not place devices on the vehicles upholstery or carpets.**

**⚠ Ensure that any auxiliary input devices are suitable for use within a vehicle before using them.**

**⚠ Any auxiliary input devices that are used need their own power source or a suitable adapter to use power from your vehicle.**

**⚠ Power supplies, transformers, adapter leads etc. should be installed professionally to make sure of safe operation and avoid damage to the vehicle electrical system.**

**⚠ Auxiliary input devices are not intended for driver use. Do not use if they are likely to cause driver distraction.**

The RSE system will accept an audio or video input through the phono jacks located in the rear cubby box. The audio or video device could be a game console, video camera, personal audio or video players, or other input device. The auxiliary input points let separate external devices to be used by the left and right rear seat passengers, or one device can be used by both rear seat passengers.



- To play an audio source connect the white lead for mono or the white and red leads for stereo.
- To play a video source connect the yellow lead.

## Headphones

**⚠ Warning: Always store headphones safely when not in use. Do not leave them unsecured as they can cause injury in the event of sudden braking or an impact.**

The RSE system includes a built-in infrared transmitter for use with wireless headphones. Adjust the volume by using the controls on each headset.

The wireless headphones must be used within a line of sight from the transmitter. See the manufacturer's instructions accompanying the wireless headphones.

Both headphones can be muted or un-muted (back to previous volume) using the infotainment centre menu system.





Using the headphones:

Press the **ON/OFF** button. The **POWER** LED will come ON.

Adjust the headphones for comfort: Hold an earpiece and pull out the headband with a smooth action. Do not use excessive force.

Select the channel to match the left or right screen. CH.1 is for the left screen and CH.2 is for the right screen.

Adjust the volume to suit.

 *The earpiece exteriors must remain exposed to the infra red transmitter in the overhead console. Any barrier will prevent them from working correctly.*

When not in use set the headphones to OFF to save battery power. The headphones will automatically set to OFF after three minutes if they have not received an infrared audio signal.

### Remote Control Battery

 **Warning:** *Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Aston Martin Dealer or your local authority.*

Before attempting to operate your remote control, install the batteries as shown below.

When the batteries require replacement the sound quality and volume will be compromised.

- Place the remote control face down on a level surface. Slide the battery cover off.
- Remove the old batteries if required
- Install two 'AAA' batteries as shown. Make sure that correct polarity (+ or -) is observed.

- Align the cover tabs with the remote control and slide the cover on.

The remote control will only operate this unit. It is not a universal remote control and will not control equipment from other manufacturers.

 *If the remote control is not used for an extended period of time, remove the batteries to prevent damage.*

## Rear Seat Entertainment

### Operating Tips

- When the engine is not operating, use the system sparingly otherwise it will drain the battery.
- When the ignition is set to OFF, the RSE is also OFF.
- The disc player is only capable of reading the bottom side of a disc. When inserting a single sided disc, ensure that the label is up. For a multi-sided disc, the desired play side should be down when the disc is inserted into the player.
- Disc players are designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly. Irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with home made paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the disc player. The label may peel and cause the disc to become jammed. It is recommended that home made discs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ball point pens may damage discs.
- The disc player is only capable of playback of DVD-Video and DVD-VR (DVD-R / DVD-RW) discs.
- Discs which are not finalised (processed to play on playback-only DVD players) cannot be played on this DVD changer.

- Some discs may not play back, depending on the recording device and disc format.
- Discs or files using copy protection, may not be playable. Some recording systems may not correctly format copied files to let correct playback.
- In the following cases, the disc may not play on this unit: discs recorded by certain DVD recorders, certain irregular discs, flawed discs, dirty discs, when the pickup lens of this DVD player is dirty, or when moisture condensation has occurred inside the unit.
- Be sure to follow all cautions included with your DVD-Rs / DVD-RWs / DVD+Rs / DVD+RWs discs.
- Compared to the regular discs, DVD-Rs / DVD-RWs / DVD+Rs / DVD+RWs are more affected by heat, moisture, and direct sunlight. If left in a car, etc., damage may occur and it might not play on this unit.
- The operating temperature range for disc playback is as follows: DVD-R / DVD-RW: -25 ~ +70°C. DVD+R / DVD+RW: +5 ~ +55°C.

## Troubleshooting

If it appears that the RSE system is not working correctly, first consult this checklist. Do not attempt to repair the system on your own as it will invalidate the warranty.

Look for the specific symptom(s) below. Only perform the action listed to remedy the specific symptom(s).

### Remote Not Working

- Check that the batteries in the remote are OK.
- Check that the remote sensor eye is not obstructed.

### Disc Will Not Play

- Check that the disc is inserted with the label side facing up.
- Check the type of disc you put into disc magazine.
- Both the unit and the disc are coded by region. If the regional codes don't match, the disc cannot be played.

### Play Starts, But Then Stops

- The disc is dirty. Clean it.
- Condensation has formed. Allow the player to dry out.

---

**No Sound or Distorted Sound**

- Make sure that your unit is connected correctly. Make sure that all cables are securely inserted into the appropriate jacks.
- If you are using the headphones, make sure that the power to the headphones is ON.
- Make sure that the modulator is ON and the correct frequency has been selected.

**Cannot Advance Through a Movie**

You cannot advance through the opening credits and warning information that appears at the beginning of movies because the disc is programmed to prohibit that action. The feature or action cannot be completed at this time because:

- The disc's software restricts it.
- The disc's software does not support the feature (e.g., angles).
- The feature is not available at the moment.
- You've requested a title or chapter number that is out of range.

**Picture is Distorted**

- The disc might be damaged. Try another disc.
- It is normal for some distortion to appear during forward or reverse scan.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Hands-Free Phone

|                            |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| Introduction .....         | 9.2  |
| Hands-Free Functions ..... | 9.2  |
| Connecting a Phone .....   | 9.4  |
| Disconnecting a Phone..... | 9.5  |
| Pairing Phones .....       | 9.5  |
| Selecting a Phone.....     | 9.7  |
| Using a Phone.....         | 9.8  |
| Phone Book .....           | 9.8  |
| Voice Mailbox.....         | 9.9  |
| Last Ten Numbers .....     | 9.9  |
| Hands-Free Menu .....      | 9.10 |

## Introduction

A mobile device equipped with hands-free (Bluetooth) capability can be connected wirelessly to the vehicle's hands-free phone system. The vehicle's hands-free phone system then lets you have remote control of a range of the mobile phone's functions. The mobile phone can always be operated by its own keys regardless of whether or not it is connected.

The hands-free system is available when the vehicle key is in ignition position 'I' or 'II'. If, during a call, the vehicle key is moved to position '0' or removed the call will transfer to the mobile phone after approximately six seconds.

The system microphone is located in the vehicle roof above the driver's head (A) and the speech from an incoming call is from the two door speakers (B).

 *The hands-free phone system uses the internal antenna of the mobile phone.*

*Placing the mobile phone in the trinket tray may degrade the hands-free system performance.*

The hands-free phone system will not recognise a mobile phone, even if it is 'paired' (Refer to 'Pairing Phones', page 9.5), if the mobile phone does not have Bluetooth enabled. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.

The hands-free phone system does not support SMS (text messages).



## Hands-Free Functions



[1] **VOLUME:** Volume control.

[2] **DISPLAY:** Shows options, menus and information.

[3] **TUNING:** Navigate through phone book and menus.

[4] **MENU:** Opens the main menu.

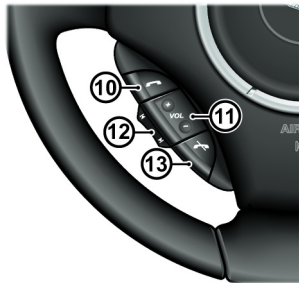
[5] **ENTER:** Press to answer or make a call, select in the menu or open a selection.

[6] **JOYSTICK:** Navigate in the menus, move forwards or backwards when entering text and digits.

[7] **PHONE:** Press to select hands-free mode or press and hold to cancel hands-free mode.

[8] **BACK:** End a call, navigate back in the menu, cancel a selection or erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.

[9] **KEYPAD:** Search through the phone book, speed dial or navigate in the menu.



[10] **CALL:** Press to answer a call or press to return to hands-free mode from audio when hands-free mode is ON.

[11] **VOLUME:** Volume control during a call.

[12] **SCROLL:** Navigate in the menus.

[13] **CANCEL:** Press to end a call or press to enter audio mode when hands-free mode is selected.

### Hands-Free Phone ON

When the hands-free system is ON the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**. During a call this symbol will change to .

When a mobile phone is connected to the hands-free system the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**. If, after 30 seconds, the hands-free phone has not been used, the infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to hands-free phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

### Menus

The hands-free menu is available when the hands-free phone system is ON and selected. If not ON or not selected press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** to access the main menu.

### Search Path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:  
<Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...>

 In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box to select an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either check or uncheck the box. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

### Call Menu

Press **MENU**, **ENTER** or **CALL** during an ongoing call to access the following functions:

**Mute microphone:** The hands-free system microphone is muted.

**Transfer call to mobile or Transfer call to vehicle:** The call can be transferred to or from the mobile phone or the vehicle phone.

**Phone book:** Access the phone book during a call.

 Some mobile phones will close the connection when the privacy function is used, this is normal. The vehicle system asks if you want to reconnect.

## Audio Settings

### Call Volume

During a call the call volume can be regulated using the **VOLUME** dial or button.

### Audio System Volume

The audio source can be automatically muted for incoming calls:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...> Enter <Mute radio> Enter.

If mute radio is OFF select one of the audio sources to control the audio system volume during an ongoing call.

### Audio System Control

Not available during a call.

When the audio system is in operation while hands-free mode is ON press **CALL** to return to hands-free mode.

### Ring Volume

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...> Enter <Ring volume> Enter. Adjust using the **TUNING** dial.

### Ring Signals

The vehicle system has integrated ring signals that can be selected:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...> Enter <Ring signal> Enter <Select Ring signal 1, 2, 3 etc.> Enter.

 The connected mobile phone's ring signal is not muted when one of the vehicles integrated signals is used.

## Connecting a Phone

A connection between the vehicle hands-free system and a mobile phone is called a 'Paired Link'. When a paired link is set up the hands-free system remembers the mobile phone's ID.

Once the hands-free system and the mobile phone are paired, the hands-free system automatically connects every time the ignition is set to ON if the hands-free system (Press **PHONE**) and the mobile phone are ON.

A mobile phone can be paired either using the vehicle hands-free system or by using the mobile phone.

This system supports paired links with up to five phones.

 The process of initiating a hands-free connection with a phone varies per phone manufacturer. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.



## Disconnecting a Phone

The mobile phone will **automatically** disconnect when moved out of the Hand-Free system's range or bluetooth is made unavailable on the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will **manually** disconnect when the hands-free system is set to OFF. Press and hold **PHONE** until  is removed from the **DISPLAY**. The function is also stopped when the ignition is set to OFF.

If the mobile phone has been disconnected from the hand-free system during an ongoing call, the call will transfer to the mobile phone.

 Some mobile phones require that the transfer is confirmed from the phone's keypad.

## Pairing Phones

### Initial Pairing

Use this procedure when pairing the first mobile phone to the hands-free system. If the hands-free system is not ON or in use, press **PHONE**.

The **DISPLAY** will show NO PAIRED PHONES. PRESS ENTER AND SELECT ADD A PHONE. Press **EXIT** to cancel. Press **ENTER**.

The hands-free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufacturer's instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in discoverable mode will be shown.

 If the  symbol is shown in the **DISPLAY** when the ignition is ON, initial pairing can be completed using the mobile phone.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**. The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show PHONE CONNECTING... then, if successful, SYNCHRONISING.

Once synchronising has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronising automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system.

### Pairing Additional Phones

#### Pairing Using the Hands-Free System

 Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the hands-free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the hands-free system has no in use Bluetooth connections.

 If, after 30 seconds, the hands-free phone has not been used, the infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to hands-free phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

Check that the mobile phone has Bluetooth ON and visible. Check that the hands-free system is ON ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

The hands-free system automatically searches for the last used phone. If the last used phone is not found a list of paired phones will show along with <Add phone>. Select <Add phone> to pair a new phone to the system.

If the last used phone is found press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Change phone...> Enter <Add Phone...>.

Press **ENTER**. The hands-free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufacturer's instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in discoverable mode will show.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**.

The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show PHONE CONNECTING... then, if successful, SYNCHRONISING. Once synchronising has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronising automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the hands-free system.

### Pairing Using the Mobile Phone

 Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the hands-free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the hands-free system has no in use Bluetooth connections.

Check that the hands-free system is selected ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

Follow the mobile phone manufacturer's instructions to search and connect to a new Bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in its range.

Select ASTON MARTIN from the device list. The phone will prompt for a passkey.

 If ASTON MARTIN does not show check that the hands-free system is selected and search again.

Press **MENU** (on the vehicle) and move to <Phone menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Connect from Mobile Phone> Enter. The **DISPLAY** will then show a passkey, enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show PHONE CONNECTING... then, if successful, SYNCHRONISING. Once synchronising has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronising automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system.

## Selecting a Phone

### Removing a Paired Phone

#### Using the Hands-Free System

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Remove Phone> Enter.

A list of paired phones will show. Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to erase or **BACK** to cancel.

#### Disconnecting a Paired Phone

Press **MENU**, and navigate to the Phone menu.

Select *Disconnect Phone*. The phone remains in the list, but is no longer paired to the vehicle's phone system.



*The phone to be selected must have Bluetooth ON, visible and in close proximity to the hands-free phone system.*

A phone can be selected by using the phone itself or by using the hands-free system:

#### Using the Mobile Phone

If not ON or not selected, press **PHONE**.

Using the mobile phone, follow the manufacturer's instructions to search and connect to a Bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in its range. Select ASTON MARTIN from the device list. Select Connect.



*If ASTON MARTIN does not show check that the hands-free system is selected and search again. If ASTON MARTIN still does not show, then the mobile phone may not be paired (Refer to 'Pairing Phones', page 9.5)*

### Using the Vehicle Hands-Free System

With the hands-free system already selected, press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Change Phone> Enter. A list of paired phones will show (along with *Add phone*). Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to change or **BACK** to cancel.

Or, if the hands-free system is not ON:

Press **PHONE**. The system will then scan for the last used mobile phone. If found and it is the mobile required then press **ENTER**. If the last phone is not found the **DISPLAY** will show a list of paired phones within range (with Bluetooth ON). Navigate to a phone and press **ENTER** to select that phone.

## Using a Phone

### Making a Call

Check that the hands-free system is selected ( symbol shows in the **DISPLAY**).

Press **PHONE**, or **CALL** on the steering wheel controls.

- Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to select a contact from the phone book. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

- Dial the number using the keypad and press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call. Press **BACK** to erase a number. Press and hold **BACK** to erase the whole number.

### Ending Calls

To end a call press **CANCEL** or **BACK**.

### Reject a Call

Press **CANCEL** or **BACK** while the phone is ringing.

### Calling Using Voice Recognition

If the mobile phone supports voice dialling:

Press, hold and release **CALL** or **ENTER**. The amount of time required to hold in **CALL** or **ENTER** is dependant on the mobile phone.

Once 'Voice Tag Dialling' shows on the **DISPLAY**, allow one to two seconds before saying a name. The vehicle system will call the contact.

### Receiving Calls

To answer an incoming call press **CALL** or **ENTER**.

### Automatic Answer - ON or OFF

The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically after four rings.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Call options...> Enter <Automatic answer> Enter.

## Phone Book

The mobile phone's phone book is synchronised automatically to the vehicle system at each connection.

If it is not required to synchronise to phone book:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Synchronising phone book> Enter.

If the phone book contains a caller's contact information, this is shown in the **DISPLAY**.

 If the mobile phone does not support copying of the phone book, 'List is empty' is shown when copying is finished.

### Contact Search

Searching for contacts is only performed in the connected mobile phone's phone book. Either:

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to bring up the contact list. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Use the **KEYPAD** to search the phone book. Press and hold a key (2 to 9) which relates to the first letter of the contact's name. This starts a search in the phone book based on the key's first letter. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

## Voice Mailbox

Or

Press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone book...> Enter <Search> Enter. Using the **KEYPAD**, enter the first few letters of the contact name, press **ENTER**.

Navigate to a contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

To enter a voice mailbox number:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Call options...> Enter <Voice mail number> Enter <Enter the number> Enter

Or

Press and hold **KEYPAD** number 1 to go to <Voice mail number>. Enter the number and press **ENTER**.

Use the stored number by pressing 1 for several seconds.

To change the voice mail number go to *Voice mail number*. Press and hold **BACK** to erase the whole number or press and release to erase individual numbers. Once the number has been erased then enter a new number.

 If the mobile phone has the voice mail number already stored then this will be placed into the system when synchronising during pairing.

## Last Ten Numbers

### Last Ten Dialed Numbers

Press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.

### Last Ten Missed and Received Numbers

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Last 10 missed calls> or <Last 10 received calls> Enter.

Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.

 Last ten dialled will also be available.

## Hands-Free Menu

### 1) Phone Menu...

- 1) Last 10 missed calls
- 2) Last 10 received calls
- 3) Last 10 dialled calls
- 4) Phone book...
  - 1) Search
  - 2) Copy fr. mobile phone
- 5) Bluetooth...
  - 1) Change Phone...
  - 2) Remove Phone
  - 3) Connect from mobile phone
- 6) Phone settings...
  - 1) Call options...
    - 1) Automatic answer
    - 2) Voice mail number
  - 2) Sounds and volume...
    - 1) Ring volume
    - 2) Ring signals...
    - 3) Mute Radio
  - 3) Synchronising phone book



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Satellite Navigation

|                                                |       |                                          |       |
|------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------------------------------|-------|
| Introduction .....                             | 10.2  | Tools .....                              | 10.14 |
| Important Safety and Product Information ..... | 10.3  | Customising the Navigation System .....  | 10.15 |
| Map Data Information .....                     | 10.3  | Information .....                        | 10.17 |
| Navigation System Controls .....               | 10.4  | Safety Cameras .....                     | 10.17 |
| Find a Location .....                          | 10.7  | Contact Information .....                | 10.18 |
| Navigation Map .....                           | 10.10 | Software License Agreement .....         | 10.18 |
| Traffic .....                                  | 10.13 | NAVTEQ® End User License Agreement ..... | 10.18 |

## Introduction

---

© 2010 Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries

All rights reserved. Except as expressly provided herein, no part of this chapter may be reproduced, copied, transmitted, disseminated, downloaded or stored in any storage medium, for any purpose without the express prior written consent of Garmin. Garmin hereby grants permission to download a single copy of this chapter onto a hard drive or other electronic storage medium to be viewed and to print one copy of this manual or of any revision hereto, provided that such electronic or printed copy of this chapter must contain the complete text of this copyright notice and provided further that any unauthorised commercial distribution of this chapter or any revision hereto is strictly prohibited.

Information in this chapter is subject to change without notice.

Garmin reserves the right to change or improve its products and to make changes in the content without obligation to notify any person or organisation of such changes or improvements. Go to the Garmin Web site ([www.garmin.com](http://www.garmin.com)) for current updates and supplemental information concerning the use and operation of this and other Garmin products.

Garmin® and the Garmin logo are trademarks of Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries, registered in the USA and other countries. nüMaps™ is a trademark of Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries. This trademark may not be used without the express permission of Garmin. microSD™ is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC. NAVTEQ is a trademark in the U.S. and other countries.



## Important Safety and Product Information

**⚠ Warning:** Failure to avoid the following potentially hazardous situations could result in an accident or collision resulting in death or serious injury.

**⚠ Warning:** Always use your best judgement, and operate the vehicle in a safe manner. Do not become distracted by the navigation system while driving, and always be fully aware of all driving conditions. Minimise the amount of time spent viewing the screen while driving and use voice prompts when possible.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not input destinations, change settings, or access any functions requiring prolonged use of the navigation system controls while driving. Bring the vehicle to a halt in a safe and legal manner before attempting such operations.

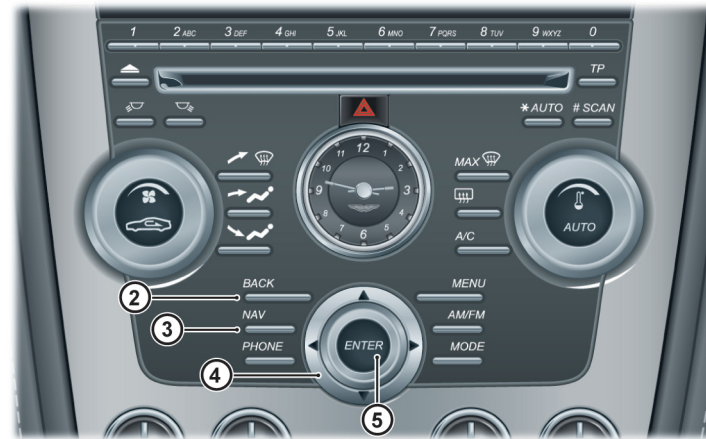
**⚠ Warning:** When navigating, carefully compare information shown on the screen to all available navigation sources, including road signs, road closures, road conditions, traffic congestion, weather conditions, and other factors that may affect safety while driving. For safety, always resolve any discrepancies before continuing navigation, and defer to posted road signs and road conditions.

**⚠ Warning:** The navigation software is designed to provide route suggestions. It is not a replacement for driver attentiveness and good judgement. Do not follow route suggestions if they suggest an unsafe or illegal manoeuvre or would place the vehicle in an unsafe situation.

## Map Data Information

Garmin uses a combination of governmental and private data sources. Virtually all data sources contain some inaccurate or incomplete data. In some countries, complete and accurate map information is either not available or is prohibitively expensive.

# Navigation System Controls



[1] **SCREEN:** Shows maps and provides detailed information on route type, distance, etc.

[2] **BACK:** Press to return to the previous menu or to undo a choice.

[3] **NAV:** Press to enable or disable Satellite navigation controls.

[4] **JOYSTICK:** Navigate through different menu options, traffic messages, etc.

[5] **ENTER:** Press to confirm, select or navigate from one submenu to the next submenu.

[6] **MAP ZOOM:** Press the rocker switch up or down to zoom the map in or out.



## How to Set the Navigation System ON and OFF

 *The screen shots shown in this manual may not exactly match the screens on your navigation system. The images used are intended for reference only.*

1. Set the vehicle key to ignition position I or II.
2. Press **NAV** (LED ON). The navigation **SCREEN** will open and the disclaimer screen will show. Press **ENTER** to agree.

## WARNING

Do not attempt to enter route information or adjust this device while driving. Failure to pay full attention to the operation of your vehicle could result in death, serious injury or property damage. You assume total responsibility and risk for using this device.

Agree

While the **NAV** button LED is ON the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions only operate the Navigation system. To use these functions for Audio or Hands-Free phone functions either:

- Press the **NAV** button again (button LED OFF). or
- Press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**.

Press **NAV** (button LED ON) again to return to Navigation controls.

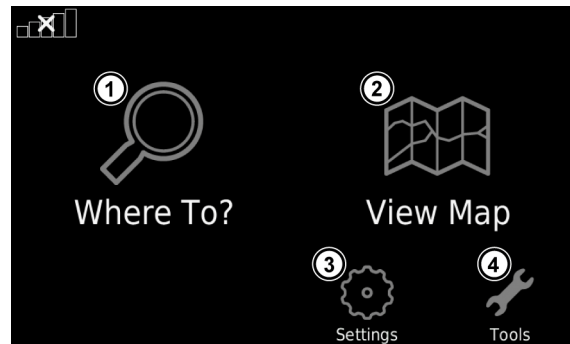
 Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.

 The navigation system can be accessed if the ignition is set to **OFF**. Always set the vehicle key to position 0 in the ignition control, and remove the vehicle key when the system is not in use to prevent the battery from discharging.

### Navigation System OFF

At any time press and hold the **NAV** button until the system screen starts to close.

### Menu Navigation



[1] : Find a destination (Refer to 'Find a Location', page 10.7)

[2] : View the map (Refer to 'Location Map', page 10.8).

[3] : System settings (Refer to 'System Settings', page 10.15).

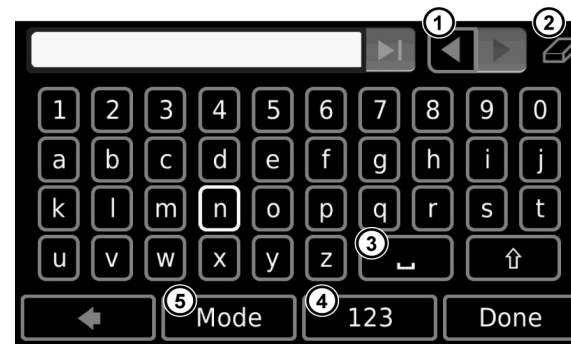
[4] : System tools (Refer to 'Tools', page 10.14)

### On-Screen Buttons

Select and hold  to quickly return to the navigation menu.

Select  or  to scroll the screen.

### On-Screen Keyboard



[1]  or : Move the cursor.

[2] : Delete a character.

[3] : Add a space.

[4] **123**: Enter numbers and special characters, such as punctuation marks.

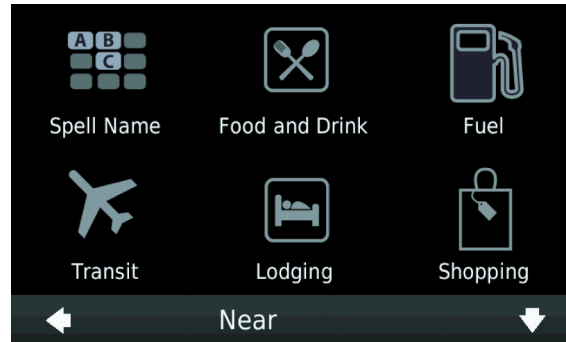
[5] **MODE**: Select the keyboard language.

## Find a Location

The Where To? menu provides several different categories you can use to search for locations.

### Points of Interest

The detailed maps loaded in the navigation system contain millions of points of interest, such as restaurants, hotels, and transportation.



### Point of Interest by Category

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter <Points of Interest>. Select a category.

If necessary, select a subcategory. Select an item.

### Point of Interest by Spelling the Name

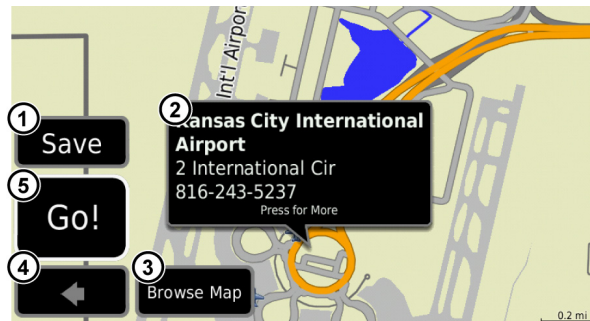
 Narrow the search results by selecting a category prior to selecting Spell Name.

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter <Points of Interest> Enter <Spell Name>.

Enter all or part of the name, and select <Done>.

Select an item.

## Location Map



After a destination is selected, the location shows on the map.

**[1]** : Save this location to Favourites.

**[2]** : View more information for the location.

**[3]** : Explore the map.

**[4]** : Return to the previous screen.

**[5]** : Create a route to this location.

## Map Zoom

To zoom in or out, select the up or down on the **MAP ZOOM** rocker switch mounted on the steering column.

### Start a Route to a Location

Select a location. Select <Go!>.

### Set a Home Location

Set your home location for the place you return to most often.

From the navigation menu, select <Tools> Enter < My Data> Enter < Set Home Location>.

Select <Enter Your Address>, <Use Your Current Location>, or <Choose from Recently Found Locations>.

### Go Home

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter <Go Home>.

### Edit Home Location

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter < Favourites> Enter < Home>.

Select <Press for More> Enter <Edit>. Select an option.

## Find an Address

Depending on the version of the maps loaded in your navigation system, the button names and the order of steps could be different from the steps below.

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter <Address>.

If necessary, change the state, country, or province.

To enter a city name or postal code, select <Spell City>, enter the name or code, and select <Done>.

To search all cities, select <Search All>.

Not all map data provides postal code searching.

Enter the address number, and select <Done>.

Enter the street name, and select <Done>.

If necessary, select the street and or the address (Refer to 'Location Map', page 10.8).

### Location by Browsing the Map

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter < Browse Map> (Refer to 'Location Map', page 10.8).

### Review Recently Found Places

The navigation system stores the last 50 locations.

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Recently Found>*.

### Clear the List of Recently Found Locations

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Recently Found> Enter <Clear> Enter <Yes>*.

All items in the list are removed, but this does not delete the actual location from your navigation system.

### Find an Aston Martin Dealership

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Dealerships>*. Select a dealer.

### Enter Coordinates

If you know the geographic coordinates of your destination, you can use the navigation system to navigate to your destination using the latitude and longitude coordinates.

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Coordinates>*.

Enter the coordinates, and select *<Done>*. Select *<Next>*.

### Change the Map Coordinate Format

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Coordinates> Enter <Format>*. Select a format.

### Location Using a Phone Number

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Phone Numbers>*.

Enter a phone number, and select *<Done>*. If an exact match is found for the phone number, the location is shown.

 *Searching by phone numbers is not available in all regions and on all maps.*

### Location in a Different Area

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To?> Enter <Near>*.

Select *<Where I Am Now>*, *<A Different City>*, *<A Recent Destination>*, *<A Favourite Destination>*, *<My Current Route>*, or *<My Destination>*. Select *<OK>*.

### Find a Different City

The navigation system lists all cities within a 20 mile radius of your current location.

From the navigation menu, select *<Where To> Enter <Cities>*.

Select an option:

- Select a city from the list of nearby cities that show
- Select *<Spell>* to enter the name of a city that does not appear on the list. Select an option.

 *The navigation system will navigate you to the centre of the selected city.*

### Favourites

You can save places in your Favourites so you can quickly find them and navigate to them. Your home location is also stored in Favourites.

### Save Current Location

From the main menu, select *<Tools> Enter <Where Am I?>*. Select *<Save Location>*.

### Save Found Places

After searching for and finding a destination, you can save it as a Favourite. From the location map, select *<Save> Enter <OK>*.

## Find Favourites

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter <Favourites>.

## Edit Favourites

From the navigation menu, select <Where To?> Enter <Favourites>.

Select the location.

Select <Edit>.

Select an item to edit:

<**Change Name**>: Enter a new name.

<**Change Map Symbol**>: Select a new symbol used to mark this location on the map.

<**Change Phone Number**>: Enter a different phone number.

<**Change Categories**>: Select another category for the location.

## Delete Favourites

From the main menu, select <Tools> Enter <My Data> Enter <Delete Favourite(s)>.

Select a Favourite. Select <Delete> Enter <Yes>.

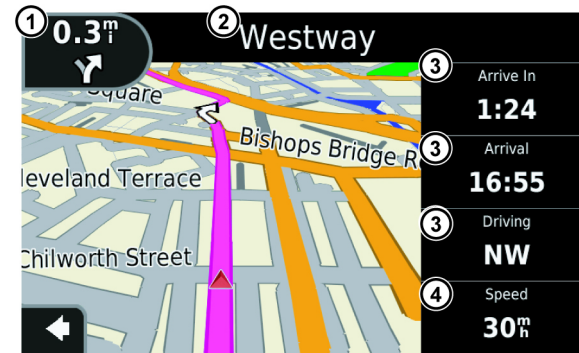
## Navigation Map

### Map Features

**!** *The speed limit icon feature is for information only and does not replace the driver's responsibility to abide by all posted speed limit signs and to use safe driving judgment at all times.*

*Garmin will not be responsible for any traffic fines or citations that you may receive for failing to follow all applicable traffic laws and signs.*

The route is marked with a magenta line. A checkered flag marks the destination. As you travel, the navigation system guides you to the destination with voice prompts, arrows on the map, and directions at the top of the map. If you depart from the original route, the system recalculates the route and provides new directions. A current speed icon may show as you travel on major roadways.



[1] : Show the next turn, or upcoming junction, when available (Refer to 'Viewing the Turn List', page 10.11).

[2] : Show the turn list.

[3] : Change the data display.

[4] : Show information about the trip.



## Viewing Trip Information

The navigation system shows the current speed and provides statistics about your trip.

To view trip information from the map, select the Speed field. If you make frequent stops, leave the navigation system ON so it can accurately measure elapsed time during the trip.

### Resetting Trip Information

From the trip information page, select <Reset>.

Select an option:

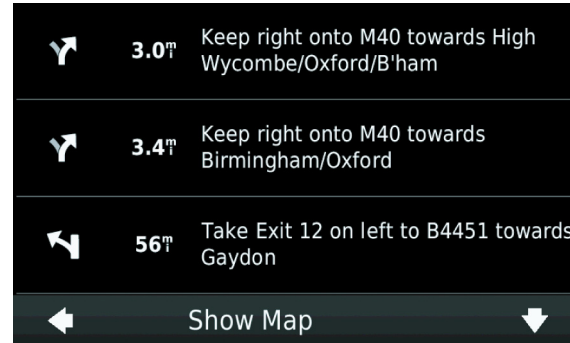
<**Reset Trip Data**>: Reset the trip information.

<**Reset Max. Speed**>: Reset the maximum speed.

Select <OK>.

## Viewing the Turn List

When navigating a route, you can view all of the turns for the whole route and the distance between turns.



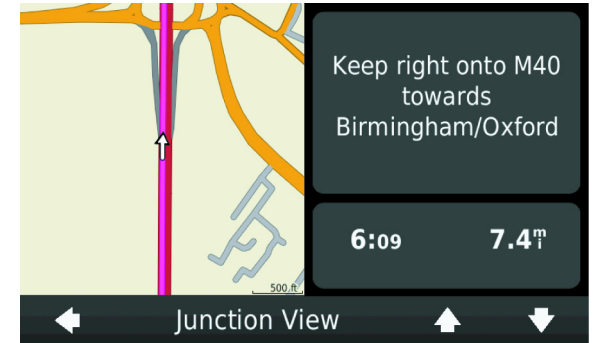
From the map, select the text bar on the top of the map.

Select an option:

- Select a turn on the list to view information about the turn
- To view the entire route on the map, select <Show Map>

## Viewing the Next Turn

Before you can view the next turn in a route, you must be navigating a route.



From the map, select the next turn icon. The next turn screen is shown on the map, along with the distance and time left before you reach the turn.

## Junction View

When available, the navigation system may show a view of the upcoming junction and in which lane you should be driving will show. This feature is not available for all junctions.



Before you can view the junction, you must be navigating a route. From the map, select the next turn icon. You can also view junctions from the turn list.

## Make Changes to the Current Route

Add stops, remove points, or change your destination while on route.

### Add One Point to Current Route

From the navigation menu select *<Where To?>*. Search for and select the extra stop.

Select *<Go!>*. Select *<Add as a Via Point>* to add this stop before your destination.

### Add or Remove Multiple Points to the Current Route

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools>* Enter *<Routes>*.

Select *<Active Route>* Enter *<Add or Remove Points>*.

Select the point or points to add or remove:

*<+>*: Add a point.

*<->*: Remove a point.

Select *<Yes>*.

### Changing the Destination of a Route

While navigating a route, select  to return to the navigation menu.

Select *<Where To?>*. Search for the location.

Select *<Go!>*. Select *<Start New Route>*.

## Detour

When navigating a route, you can use detours to avoid obstacles ahead of you, such as construction zones.

While navigating a route, select  to return to the navigation menu. Select *<Detour>*.

If the current route is the only reasonable option, the navigation system might not calculate a detour.

## Stopping the Route

While navigating a route, select  to return to the navigation menu. Select *<Stop>*.

# Traffic

Garmin is not responsible for the accuracy or timeliness of the traffic information.

Your navigation system can receive FM Traffic Message Channel (TMC) traffic content, which provides information on nearby traffic incidents and construction. The subscription is automatically enabled and does not require an additional subscription purchase. Traffic information is not available in all areas.

## Traffic Information

When you are within a traffic coverage area, your device will show traffic information. The navigation system must be in data range of an FM station transmitting traffic information.

## Traffic Icon

When traffic information is being received, a traffic icon appears on the map. The traffic icon changes colour to show the severity of traffic conditions.

| Colour | Severity | Meaning                                                                      |
|--------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green  | Low      | Traffic is flowing freely                                                    |
| Yellow | Medium   | Traffic is moving but there is a delay. There is moderate traffic congestion |
| Red    | High     | Traffic is not moving or moving very slowly. There is a severe delay         |

## Traffic on Route

When calculating a route, the navigation system examines the current traffic and automatically optimises the route for the shortest time. If a severe traffic delay occurs on route while you are navigating, the device automatically recalculates the route.

You might still be routed through traffic if no better alternative routes exist.

## Manually Avoiding Traffic on Your Route

From the map, select . Select <Traffic On Route>. If necessary, use the arrows to view other traffic delays on your route. Select <Avoid>.

## View the Traffic Map

The traffic map shows colour-coded traffic flow and delays on nearby roads.

From the map, select . Select <Traffic Map> to view the traffic incidents on a map.

## Tools

The Tools menu provides many features that are helpful when you are travelling.

### View Current Location Information

Use the Where Am I? page to view information about your current location. This feature is helpful if you need to tell emergency personnel your location.



From the navigation menu, select *<Tools> Enter <Where Am I?>*.

### Find Nearby Services

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools> Enter <Where Am I?>*. Select *<Hospitals>*, *<Police Stations>*, *<Lodging>*, or *<Fuel>* to view the nearest locations in that category.

### Use Help

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools> Enter <Help to get information about using your navigation system>*.

### Search Help Topics

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools> Enter <Help> Enter <Search>*.

### Clear the Trip Log

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools> Enter <My Data>*. Select *<Clear Trip Log>*.

### Routes

Up to 10 routes can be saved.

### Search for Traffic Delays

From the map, select .

Select *<Traffic Search>* to view a list of roads with traffic delays.

Select an item in the list to view delays on the road. If there is more than one delay, use the arrows to view additional delays.

### Create and Save a Route

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools>* Enter *<Routes>* Enter *<New>*.

Find a location (Refer to 'Find a Location', page 10.7) as your starting point, and select *<Select>*. Find a location for your ending point, and select *<Select>*.

If necessary, find and select additional locations to add them as stops along the route. The navigation system calculates and saves the route.

### Navigate a Saved Route

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools>* Enter *<Routes>*.

Select a saved route. Select *<Go!>*.

Refer to Location Map (Refer to 'Location Map', page 10.8) for more information.

### Edit a Saved Route

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools>* Enter *<Routes>*.

Select a saved route. Select *<Edit>*.

Select an item to edit:

**<Change Name>**: Enter a new name.

**<Add or Remove Points>**: Add or remove points from the route, change the order of points along the route, and automatically order the points.

**<Manually Reorder Points>**: Change the route order of the points.

**<Optimally Reorder Points>**: To edit the route using the map.

**<Recalculate>**: Recalculate the route.

**<Delete>**: Remove this route.

Changes are automatically saved when you exit any of the route edit pages.

### Delete a Route

Select *<Tools>* Enter *<My Data>* Enter *<Delete Selected Route(s)>*.

Select a route(s) to delete. Select *<Delete>*.

### World Clock

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools>* Enter *<World Clock>*.

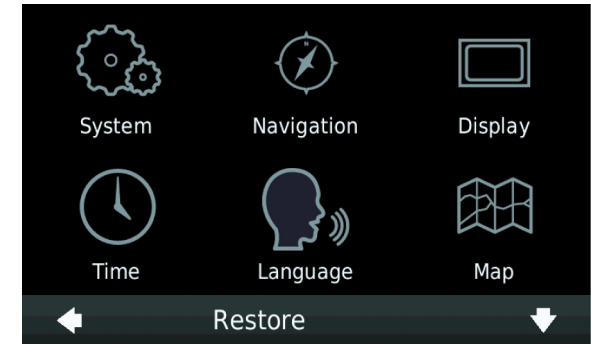
Select a city name. Enter a new city name. Select *<Done>*.

If necessary, select a city option.

### Calculator

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools>* Enter *<Calculator>*.

1. From the navigation menu, select *<Settings>*.
2. Select the setting you want to change.



### System Settings

From the navigation menu, select *<Settings>* Enter *<System>*.

**GPS Simulator**: Sets on the simulator to set the GPS mode to OFF and simulate navigation.

**Units:** Change the units of measure for distance.

**Keyboard Layout:** Selects QWERTY for a layout similar to a computer keyboard, or selects ABCDE for an alphabetical layout.

**About:** Shows the navigation system software version number, the unit ID number, and information on other software features.

**Restore:** Restores the system settings to factory default.

## Navigation Settings

From the navigation menu, select *<Settings> Enter <Navigation>*.

**Route Preference:** Change the preference for calculating a route.

**Avoidances:** Change the road types to avoid.

**Voice Prompts:** Receive voice prompt directions.

**Restore:** Restores the original navigation settings.

## Map Settings

From the navigation menu, select *<Settings> Enter <Map>*.

**Map Detail:** Adjust the amount of detail shown on the map. More detail can result in a slower map redraw rate in some areas or at wider zoom levels.

**Map View:** Change the map perspective.

- **Track Up:** Shows the map in two dimensions (2-D) with the direction of travel at the top.
- **North Up:** Shows the map in 2-D with north at the top.
- **3-D:** Shows the map in three dimensions (3-D) with the direction of travel at the top.

**Vehicle:** Change the icon used to show your position on the map

**Trip Log:** Show or hide the log of your travels.

**Map Data Layout:** Change the amount of data visible on the map.

**Info:** Shows the maps and the version of each map loaded on the navigation system. Select a map to enable (check mark) or disable (no check mark) that map.

**Restore:** Restore the original map settings.

## Changing the Vehicle Icon

Select *<Settings> Enter <Map> Enter <Vehicle> Enter <Change>*.

Select the icon you want to use, and select *<Done>*.

## Clearing the Trip Log

From the navigation menu, select *<Tools> Enter <My Data> Enter <Clear Trip Log>*.

## Display Settings

From the navigation menu, select *<Settings> Enter <Display>*.

**Colour Mode:** Set a light background (Day), a dark background (Night), or automatically switches between the two based on the sunrise time and the sunset time for your current location (Auto).

## Language Settings

From the navigation menu, select *<Settings> Enter <Language>*.

**Voice:** Set the language for voice prompts.

**Text:** Set all on-screen text to the selected language.

**Keyboard:** Set the language for the keyboard.

**Restore:** Restore the original language settings.

## Proximity Points Alerts Settings

From the navigation menu, select *<Settings> Enter <Proximity Points> Enter <Change> Enter <Audio>*.

**Proximity Alerts:** Set the alerts ON or OFF when you approach safety cameras.

**Restore:** Restore the original proximity points settings.

## Security Settings

From the navigation menu, select <Settings> Enter <Security>.

**Safe Mode:** Set Safe Mode ON or OFF.

**Restore:** Restore the original security settings

## Information

When the navigation system has acquired satellite signals, the signal

strength bars on the navigation menu are white .

The more white bars, the stronger the GPS signal.

If the navigation system is not receiving GPS signals, the bars will

show red .

For more information about GPS, go to [www.garmin.com/aboutGPS](http://www.garmin.com/aboutGPS).

### View Detailed GPS Signal Information

From the navigation menu, select <Tools> Enter <Satellite Status>.

## Safety Cameras

 **Garmin is not responsible for the accuracy of, or the consequences of using, a custom POI or safety camera database.**

Safety camera information is available in some areas. For these areas, the navigation system includes the locations of hundreds of safety cameras. Your navigation system alerts you when you are approaching a safety camera and can warn you if you are driving too fast.

## Contact Information

Contact your Aston Martin dealership if you have questions while using your navigation system (Refer to 'Find an Aston Martin Dealership', page 10.9).

## Software License Agreement

BY USING THE Aston Martin Lagonda navigation system, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE FOLLOWING SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT. PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY.

Garmin grants you a limited license to use the software embedded in this device (the 'Software') in binary executable form in the normal operation of the product. Title, ownership rights, and intellectual property rights in and to the Software remain in Garmin. You acknowledge that the Software is the property of Garmin and is protected under the United States of America copyright laws and international copyright treaties. You further acknowledge that the structure, organization, and code of the Software are valuable trade secrets of Garmin and that the Software in source code form remains a valuable trade secret of Garmin. You agree not to decompile, disassemble, modify, reverse assemble, reverse engineer, or reduce to human readable form the Software or any part thereof or create any derivative works based on the Software. You agree not to export or re-export the Software to any country in violation of the export control laws of the United States of America.

## NAVTEQ® End User License Agreement

The software embedded in your Garmin product (the 'Software') is owned by Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries ('Garmin'). The third-party map data embedded in or accompanying your Garmin product (the 'Map Data') is owned by NAVTEQ North America LLC and/or its affiliates and is licensed to Garmin. Garmin also licenses information, text, images, graphics, photographs, audio, video, images and other applications and data from third party data providers ('Third Party Content Data'). The Map Data and Third Party Content Data are collectively the 'Data'. Both the Software and Data are protected under copyright laws and international copyright treaties. The Software and Data are licensed, not sold. The Software and Data are provided under the following license and are subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by End User ('you' or 'your'), on the one hand, and Garmin and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) and affiliated companies on the other hand.



---

IMPORTANT: CAREFULLY READ THIS LICENSE BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT. INSTALLING, COPYING, OR OTHERWISE USING THIS PRODUCT INDICATES YOUR ACKNOWLEDGMENT THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS LICENSE AND AGREE TO ITS TERMS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, RETURN THE COMPLETE PRODUCT WITHIN 7 DAYS OF THE DATE YOU ACQUIRED IT (IF PURCHASED NEW) FOR A FULL REFUND TO THE DEALER FROM WHICH YOU PURCHASED THIS PRODUCT.

---

### License Terms and Conditions

Garmin ('we' or 'us') provides you with storage media containing the computer Software (the 'Software') and the embedded or accompanying Data, including any 'online' or electronic documentation and printed materials (together called the 'Product' for purposes of this License Agreement), and grants you a limited, non-exclusive license to use the Product in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. You agree to use this Data together with the Garmin product for solely personal, or if applicable, for use in your business' internal operations, and not for service bureau, time-sharing, resale or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Software or Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer or create derivative works of any portion of the Product, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. Garmin also reserves the right to discontinue offering any Data supplied by any third party supplier if such supplier ceases to supply such content or Garmin's contract with such supplier terminates for any reason.

---

### Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Garmin, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, and which are capable of dispatch, fleet management or similar applications where the Data is used by a central control centre in dispatching a fleet of vehicles. In addition, you are prohibited from renting or leasing the Data or the Garmin products containing the Data to any other person or third party. Only those rental car companies that are specifically authorised by Garmin in writing to rent Garmin products containing the Data to their rental customers are permitted to rent out such products.

---

**No Warranty**

This Product (including the Data) is provided to you 'as is,' and you agree to use it at your own risk. Garmin and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from the Product, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

---

**Disclaimer of Warranty**

GARMIN AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NONINFRINGEMENT. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY GARMIN OR ITS SUPPLIERS AND LICENSORS SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

---

**Disclaimer of Liability**

GARMIN AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE DATA OR INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF GARMIN OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

GARMIN'S AND ITS LICENSORS' TOTAL AGGREGATE LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO ITS OBLIGATIONS UNDER THIS AGREEMENT OR OTHERWISE WITH RESPECT TO THE GARMIN PRODUCT OR THE DATA SHALL NOT EXCEED \$1.00.

---

Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

#### **Disclaimer of Endorsement**

Reference to any products, services, processes, hypertext links to third parties or other Data by trade name, trademark, manufacturer, supplier or otherwise does not necessarily constitute or imply its endorsement, sponsorship or recommendation by Garmin or its licensors. Product and service information are the sole responsibility of each individual vendor. The NAVTEQ name and logo, the NAVTEQ and NAVTEQ ON BOARD trademarks and logos, and other trademarks and trade names owned by NAVTEQ North America LLC may not be used in any commercial manner without the prior written consent of NAVTEQ.

#### **Export Control**

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

---

#### **Indemnity**

You agree to indemnify, defend and hold Garmin and its licensors (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives of each of them) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of the Product (including the Data).

---

#### **Canadian Map Data**

The Map Data for Canada may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty and Canada Post. Such data is licensed on an 'as is' basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty and Canada Post, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty and Canada Post, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Map Data.

The licensors, including Her Majesty and Canada Post, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Map Data. You shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen, the Minister of Natural Resources of Canada and Canada Post, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Map Data.

#### **Term**

This Agreement is effective until such time as (I) if applicable, your subscription term is either terminated (by you or by Garmin) or expires, or (ii) Garmin terminates this Agreement for any reason, including, but not limited to, if Garmin finds that you have violated any of the terms of this Agreement. In addition, this Agreement shall terminate immediately upon the termination of an agreement between Garmin and any third party from whom Garmin licenses the Data.

#### **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Garmin (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

#### **Governing Law**

##### **(a) For European Union NAVTEQ Data**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the Netherlands, without giving effect to (I) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the Netherlands for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the NAVTEQ Data provided to you hereunder.

##### **(b) For North American NAVTEQ Data and other non-European Union NAVTEQ Data**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of Illinois, without giving effect to (I) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the NAVTEQ Data provided to you hereunder.

##### **(c) For disputes, claims and actions not related to the NAVTEQ Data**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of Kansas, without giving effect to (I) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of Kansas for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

---

### Government End Users

If End User is an agency, department, or other entity of the United States Government, or funded in whole or in part by the U.S. Government, then use, duplication, reproduction, release, modification, disclosure or transfer of the Product and accompanying documentation is subject to restrictions as set forth in DFARS 252.227-7014(a)(1) (JUN 1995) (DOD commercial computer software definition), DFARS 27.7202-1 (DOD policy on commercial computer software), FAR 52.227-19 (JUN 1987) (commercial computer software clause for civilian agencies), DFARS 252.227-7015 (NOV 1995) (DOD technical data – commercial items clause); FAR 52.227-14 Alternates I, II, and III (JUN 1987) (civilian agency technical data and noncommercial computer software clause); and/or FAR 12.211 and FAR 12.212 (commercial item acquisitions), as applicable. In case of conflict between any of the FAR and DFARS provisions listed herein and this License, the construction that provides greater limitations on the Government's rights shall control.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Maintenance

|                                   |       |                                      |       |                            |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------|-------|
| Introduction .....                | 11.2  | Brake Pad Bedding-in.....            | 11.11 | Headlamp .....             | 11.32 |
| Vehicle Jacking.....              | 11.3  | Tyres.....                           | 11.12 | Headlamp Alignment .....   | 11.32 |
| Servicing Precautions.....        | 11.3  | US Department of Transportation..... | 11.13 | Other External Lamps.....  | 11.33 |
| Dangerous Substances.....         | 11.4  | Winter Tyres .....                   | 11.19 | Boot Lamps.....            | 11.34 |
| Emergency Items .....             | 11.5  | Tyre Sealant Kit .....               | 11.19 | Internal Lamps .....       | 11.34 |
| Owner Maintenance .....           | 11.5  | Vehicle Recovery .....               | 11.21 | Door Window Reset.....     | 11.35 |
| Bonnet Release .....              | 11.7  | Vehicle Battery.....                 | 11.25 | Front Seat Reset .....     | 11.35 |
| Fluid Levels .....                | 11.8  | Vehicle Battery Charge .....         | 11.26 | Bodywork Maintenance ..... | 11.36 |
| Windscreen Blade Replacement..... | 11.11 | Battery Protection Mode .....        | 11.27 | Vehicle Cleaning.....      | 11.36 |
|                                   |       | Fuse Boxes .....                     | 11.29 | Vehicle Storage .....      | 11.39 |

## Introduction

Each item in the service schedules must be performed on time as failure to do so may void the new vehicle warranty or other warranties. It is the owner's responsibility to see that the vehicle is maintained correctly and in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedules.

Due to the sophistication of the various systems and the specialised equipment required to maintain this vehicle, owner maintenance should be restricted to the routine procedures described in this owner's guide.

If you think that this vehicle is not functioning correctly, please return it to an Aston Martin Dealer to be checked professionally.

### Restraint Systems

Aston Martin recommend that the inflatable (airbags) restraint systems and seat belt components installed to this vehicle are replaced at 10 year intervals from the date of manufacture on the certification label.

### Electronic Fuel Injection

**⚠ Warning: If the fuel system is allowed to run dry irreparable damage to the fuel pumps may occur.**

**⚠ Warning: Any modifications or additions to the fuel system not specifically designed by Aston Martin are prohibited. If carried out, they may cause damage to the fuel system which in some circumstances could result in fire. All Service Action Campaigns must be undertaken by an Aston Martin Dealer.**

The electronic fuel injection system requires special equipment and test facilities to set up and maintain so that the vehicle gives maximum performance coupled with economy, reliability and safe vehicle emissions. You are, therefore, strongly advised to entrust all service work to an Aston Martin Dealer.

### Parts and Lubricants

When undertaking a servicing task only parts, materials, lubricants, etc. that are specifically recommended by Aston Martin should be used. Failure to do so can result in damage to your vehicle and may invalidate your new vehicle warranty or other warranties (Refer to 'Aston Martin Warranty', page C.1).

**⚠ Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of incorrect engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines. Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.**

### Emission Warranty

The emission control systems installed to vehicles for certain markets are covered by a separate warranty. A statement of the provisions is given in the Warranty section of this Owner's Guide. You are advised to familiarise yourself with all warranty conditions at the earliest opportunity after taking delivery of your vehicle.



## Vehicle Jacking

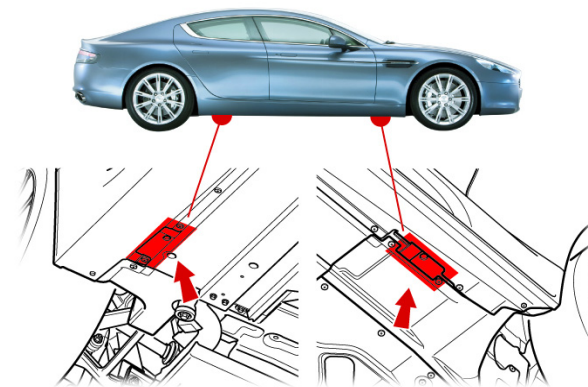
**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle before jacking commences.

**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that the park brake is ON and that the vehicle transmission is in Park (P).

**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that the vehicle is parked on firm and level ground to give a secure base for the jack.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not raise the vehicle by placing a vehicle jack under the suspension arms.

If this vehicle is to be raised using a vehicle jack make sure that the following jacking points are use.



## Servicing Precautions

To avoid personal injury, the following safety precautions must be observed when the bonnet is open and the engine is operating or the ignition is ON.

**⚠ Warning:** Protect yourself against dangerous substances (Refer to 'Dangerous Substances', page 11.4).

**⚠ Warning:** Keep hands, hair, tools, items of clothing and jewellery clear of all drive belts, pulleys and operating mechanisms. The cooling fans may operate even though the engine is not operating.

**⚠ Warning:** Avoid skin contact with all exhaust system and engine components, engine fluids and escaping steam. They may be hot and will burn you.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not breathe exhaust fumes. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas, which is colourless and odourless and can cause unconsciousness and may be fatal. Never start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not work beneath the vehicle with a vehicle lifting jack as the only support. Place suitable stands under the vehicle.

## Dangerous Substances

**⚠ Warning:** Keep children and pets clear of the vehicle. Do not let anyone inside the vehicle unless specifically working to your instructions.

**⚠ Warning:** Whenever possible work in the engine compartment with the engine cool, the ignition OFF and the vehicle battery disconnected.

**⚠ Warning:** Petrol is highly flammable and, in confined spaces, is also explosive and toxic. In the event of spillage, set the engine to OFF, use no naked flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.

**⚠ Warning:** Dangerous substances should be kept out of reach of children.

**⚠ Warning:** Many liquids and other substances used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should under no circumstances be consumed and should, so far as possible, be kept from contact with the skin. These substances include battery electrolyte, antifreeze, oil, brake and clutch fluid, petrol, windscreen washer additives, lubricants, refrigerant and various adhesives.

**⚠ Warning:** Particular care should be taken to avoid unnecessary contact with used engine oil. Always read carefully the instructions printed on labels or stamped on components and follow them carefully. Such instructions are included for reasons of your health and personal safety. Never disregard them.

## Engine Oils

**⚠ Warning:** Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid excessive contact, wash thoroughly after contact. Keep out of reach of children. When your oil is changed, be sure that it is done by an experienced person. In addition, observe all laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and toxic fluids.

## Protect The Environment

**⚠ Warning:** It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorised waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing facilities for receipt of used oil. If in doubt, contact your local authority for advice.

## Emergency Items

The following emergency items are located in the boot.

**[1]** : Tyre Sealant Kit (Refer to 'Tyre Sealant Kit', page 11.19).

**[2]** : First Aid Kit (located behind the left side trim panel)<sup>1</sup>.

**[3]** : Warning Triangle<sup>2</sup>.

**[4]** : Fuel Fill Funnel (located under the trim panel in the boot floor. In the top left or right side of the boot floor trim panel pull up on the trim carpet to lift the panel.)



<sup>1</sup>. Option.

<sup>2</sup>. Not available in Federal markets.

## Owner Maintenance

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the intervals suggested (more frequently if your vehicle is heavily used or operating in adverse conditions), and always before starting on a long journey. Refer to the following pages for advice and check procedures.

### Before Use Check:

- Operation of lamps, horn, indicators, wipers, washers and warning symbols
- Check there is sufficient fuel for the intended journey, particularly at night and before entering motorways
- Operation of the seat belts
- Operation of the brakes
- Check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle.

## Weekly Checks

(daily if covering high mileage or touring)

- Tyres
- Coolant level
- Brake fluid level
- Power steering level
- Operate Air Conditioning
- Windscreen washer fluid level
- Check operation of windscreen washers.

## Fuel Filler Bowl

During fuel filling check that the fuel filler bowl drain pipe is free from debris which may block the pipe. If the pipe is blocked water can not drain from the bowl and can overflow into the fuel tank.

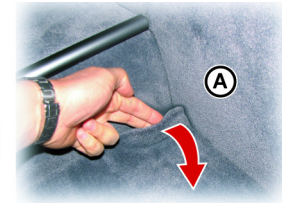
## Engine Oil Level

**! It is important to check the engine oil level regularly. Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.**

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever is the sooner.

## Tool Kit

A vehicle tool kit is located under the trim panel in the boot floor. In the top left or right side of this panel pull up on the trim carpet to lift the panel (A).



The tool kit consists of:

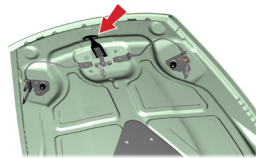
- Towing eye (Refer to 'Vehicle Recovery', page 11.21)
- Screwdriver
- Road wheel lock nut socket (optional)

## Battery Conditioner

(Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.26)

## Bonnet Release

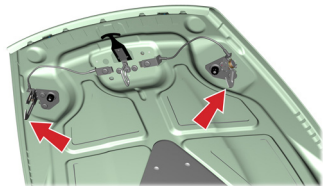
**⚠ Warning:** Do not pull on the bonnet secondary catch to assist in closing the bonnet. This may displace the bonnet secondary catch. If the catch is displaced it may not work correctly.



**⚠** Do not press down hard on the bonnet if it has not closed correctly. This may damage the bonnet.

**⚠** Take care to not unintentionally pull on or catch the bonnet release lever.

**⚠ Warning:** There are two secondary latches installed on the bonnet. To avoid personal injury, take care when under the bonnet.

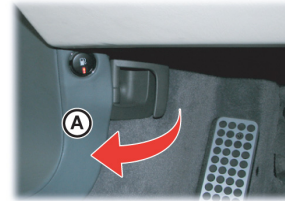


**📖** If the windscreen wipers are operating, they will temporarily rest in the park position while the bonnet is unlatched.

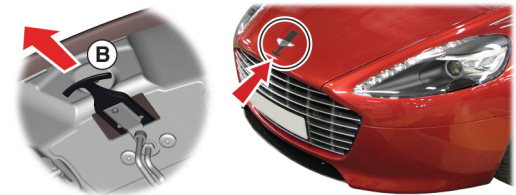
**📖** Before closing the bonnet, remove any tools, cleaning cloths, etc. from the engine compartment. Make sure that no one is obstructing the 'closing' area and that hands, clothing etc. are clear.

**📖** If the bonnet does not fully close or it opens during driving the message centre (right) will show BONNET OPEN.

To open the bonnet pull the lever (A) located in the left front footwell to release the bonnet latch. The bonnet will rise but stay secured by the bonnet secondary catch.



Lift slightly on the bonnet front edge whilst pulling forward and then upward on the bonnet secondary catch (B) to release it. Lift the bonnet until fully open. The bonnet is held open by two gas struts.

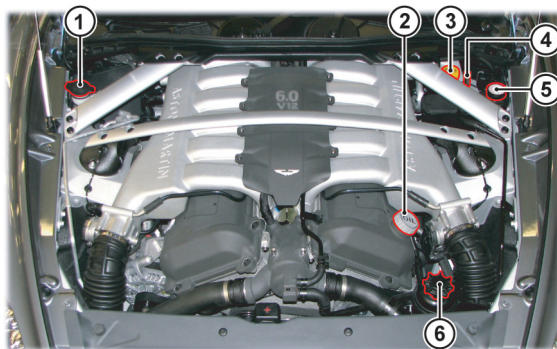


To close the bonnet lower the bonnet until it starts to fall under its own weight. At that point let the bonnet fall to close.

If the bonnet does not shut, open the bonnet again and repeat the closure procedure, this time assist using light hand pressure as the bonnet falls.

## Fluid Levels

**⚠ Warning:** Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.



- [1] : Washer fluid reservoir.
- [2] : Engine oil filler cap.
- [3] : Brake fluid reservoir.
- [4] : Engine oil dipstick.
- [5] : Engine coolant reservoir.
- [6] : Power steering fluid reservoir.

### Windscreen Wash Fluid Level

Top up as required. In winter, to prevent the windscreen wash fluid freezing, increase the fluid concentration (refer to the manufacturers recommendations on the windscreen wash fluid container).

When the level of windscreen wash fluid is low an information message will show in the message centre (right) and the amber warning symbol will come ON.



Local or state regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windscreen washer fluid. A windscreen washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

### Windscreen Washer Jets

The washer jet housings are located on the rear edge of the bonnet. Each housing contains two washer jets.

Windscreen washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjustment. However, if adjustment is required, adjust up or down so that the fluid strikes between a third and half way up the windscreen.

## Brake Fluid Level

**⚠ Warning:** Do not drive the vehicle if the brake fluid level is below the minimum mark.

**! Make sure that the brake fluid does not contact the paint work during the topping up operation. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any brake fluid from the paint work with clean, fresh water and then wipe with a clean damp cloth.**

The brake fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.

1. Remove the reservoir cap. Top up to the Max. level.
2. Install the reservoir cap securely.



## Engine Coolant Level

**⚠ Warning:** Do not remove the filler cap until the coolant system has cooled. Scalding can be caused by escaping steam or coolant.

 Use a cloth or glove to protect hands and protect face and arms adequately.

1. Remove the pressure cap to check the coolant level. The correct coolant level is to the top of the reservoir tank. Top up with the correct antifreeze mix, if required (Refer to 'Fluids and Capacities', page 12.8).
2. Make sure that the filler cap is secure after topping up.

**! Do not over tighten.**

If required to remove the pressure cap before the engine is cold, **use gloves or a protective cloth** and slowly loosen the pressure cap. Allow residual pressure to slowly drop. Continue to turn the pressure cap until it is released.



## Power Steering Fluid Level

**! Make sure that the power steering fluid does not contact the paint work during topping up. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any power steering fluid from the paint work with clean fresh water, then wipe with a clean damp cloth.**

Always check the reservoir level when the engine is cold and with the front road wheels in the straight ahead position.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent an ingress of contaminants.

1. Remove the reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace and remove again. The fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.
2. If required, top up fluid level. **Do not overfill.**



## Engine Oil Level

**⚠ Warning: Engine oil or components may be hot and could cause severe burns.**

**⚠ Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.**

**⚠ This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of incorrect engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT give the protection required by modern, high performance engines.**

**⚠ Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure (Refer to 'Fluids and Capacities', page 12.8).**

- The vehicle should be on level ground.
- Check the oil level when the engine completely cold.
- Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever ever is the sooner.

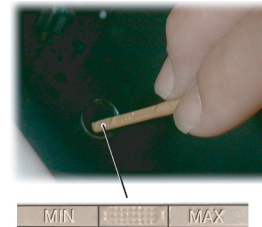
### Oil level check:

1. Withdraw and wipe the dipstick clean, using a lint free cloth.
2. Fully insert the dipstick with the Min. and Max. marking on the blade upwards (facing towards the engine). Withdraw again.

 Approximately one litre (two pints) is required to bring the level from Min. to Max.



3. The oil level should read between the Min. & Max. marks.



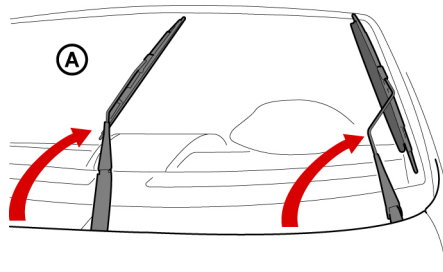
4. If required remove the filler, top up to the Max. mark with the recommended engine oil.
5. Wait for approximately two minutes for the oil to settle, then check the level again. Add oil if required. **Do not overfill.**
6. Replace the filler cap securely, replace the dipstick & press it home.



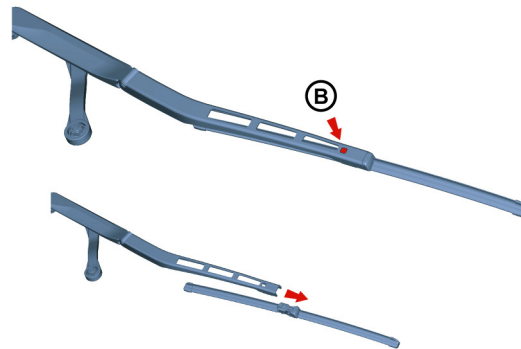


## Windscreen Blade Replacement

To replace the windscreen wiper blades the wiper arms must be set at 90° to the vehicle (A). Press and hold in buttons 2 and 6 on the Infotainment keypad. Insert the vehicle key in the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON). This will manoeuvre the wiper blade arms to the 90° position. Return the vehicle key to position '0'.



Lift the wiper arm(s) up, press at point B and remove the worn wiper blade(s). Install the new wiper blade(s) and lower the wiper arm(s).



After replacing the wiper blade either:

- Move the vehicle key back through to position 'II' to lower the wiper arms. Return the vehicle key to position '0' or remove
- Operate the wiper stalk - the wiper arms will complete the request and then park

## Brake Pad Bedding-in

**! Failure to bed-in new brake pads will result in reduced brake performance and possible brake judder or squeal.**

After the installation of new brake pads, brake performance will be reduced, as the brake discs and pads need to be bedded-in. For the first few hundred kilometres of new brake pad use, avoid excessive braking (hard stops from high speed, alpine descents, etc.).

### Clutch Bedding-in

The vehicle needs to be driven carefully for the first 1000 miles/1600 km before the clutch is fully bedded in. If the vehicle is not driven carefully during this time, early failure of the clutch can occur. This is not covered by warranty as it is incorrect use of the clutch and is considered 'wear'.

For more information on the correct procedure of bedding-in a new clutch, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

**! Failure to bed-in a new clutch will result in reduced performance, and possible clutch damage.**

## Tyres

Tyres of the correct type, manufacturer and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tyres contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle.

Road holding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurised, badly installed or worn tyres.

Tyres of the correct size and type, but of different make have widely varying characteristics.

Only install tyres approved by Aston Martin.

### Tyre Pressures

Make sure that correct tyre pressures are carefully maintained. Road holding, steering, braking and tyre wear are especially vulnerable to incorrect tyre pressures.

Check tyre pressures regularly and before starting any journey. Re-inflate any tyre with a low pressure at the earliest opportunity.

Pressures increase slightly when the tyres are hot. For an accurate reading, pressures should be checked when the tyres are cold. After adjusting the tyre pressures, make sure that the valve caps are securely replaced to provide an additional air seal and to prevent the ingress of dirt.

### Tyre Service

 *Because of the high performance potential of this vehicle, Aston Martin strongly recommend replacement of any damaged or worn tyre.*

The recommended tyres for this vehicle are asymmetrical and must be installed to the wheel with the tyre mark 'Outside' on the outside of the wheel rim.

They are also of different sizes on the front and rear axles, therefore complete wheels cannot be swapped between axles. Complete wheels can, however, be swapped from side to side on the same axle.

### Damage

Tyres should be examined at regular intervals for wear and damage. Inspect the tyre treads and sidewalls for damage, i.e. bulges in the tread or the sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or the sidewalls. If damage is observed or suspected have the tyre inspected by a tyre professional.

Stones or other objects which have become lodged in the tyre treads should be carefully removed.

### Flat Spots

It is a characteristic of high performance tyres that temporary 'flat spots' may develop if the vehicle is left standing in high or low ambient temperatures for any length of time.

These 'flat spots' will manifest themselves as minor vibrations when the vehicle is first driven from cold. As the tyres warm up to operating temperature, normal tyre shape should be restored and the vibrations cease. If vibrations persist, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

### Age

 *Local regulations on tyre life may apply.*

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tyres generally be replaced after five years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

## US Department of Transportation

### New Tyres

New tyres should not be installed to the front wheels in combination with worn rear tyres, as rear end stability will be affected. When new tyres are required consult your Aston Martin Dealer for advice if the rear tyres are also worn. Each wheel and tyre unit must be balanced dynamically and measured for Radial Force Variation (RFV)<sub>1</sub> to make sure of efficient steering, optimum tyre wear and maximum ride comfort. Because of the potentially high speeds, it is essential that wheel balancing is carried out when new tyres are installed.

### Running-In New Tyres

When new tyres have been installed, speed should be limited, particularly during the first 80 km or so of driving. Fast cornering, hard braking, and harsh acceleration should also be avoided during this period.

---

<sub>1</sub>. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for more information.

### Tread Wear Marks

Tread wear marks (A) are incorporated into the construction of all tyres. These marks are integral moulded ribs spaced at regular intervals around the circumference of the tyre and extend across the full width of the tread, in all primary grooves.

When a tyre has worn causing one or more of the marks to be flush with the outer face of the tread the tyre has reached its wear limit. It then becomes illegal in certain countries and must be replaced.



### Uniform Tire Quality Grades

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by tread wear, traction and temperature performance. All passenger vehicle tires must conform to federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

#### Tread Wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of a tire tested, under controlled conditions, on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half times (1½) as well, on the government course, as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the normal due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### Traction

**⚠ Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature

**⚠ Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is correctly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

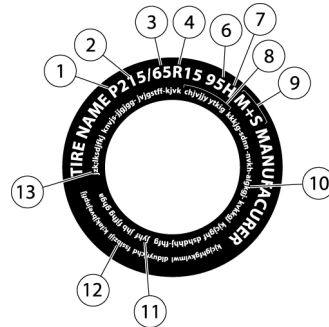
### Tire Sidewall Information

Both US and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and incase of a recall.

#### Information on 'P' Type Tires

'P215/65R15 95H' is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below.

 *The tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.*



**[1] P:** A tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

 *If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).*

**[2] 215:** The nominal width of the tire in millimetres from side wall edge to side wall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**[3] 65:** The aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**[4] R:** Shows a "radial" type tire.

**[5] 15:** The wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**[6] 95:** The tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your Owner's Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

 *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

**[7] H:** The tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 186 mph. These ratings are listed in the following chart.

| Letter Rating | Speed Rating |
|---------------|--------------|
| M             | 81 mph       |
| N             | 87 mph       |
| Q             | 99 mph       |
| R             | 106 mph      |
| S             | 112 mph      |
| T             | 118 mph      |
| U             | 124 mph      |
| H             | 130 mph      |
| V             | 149 mph      |
| W             | 168 mph      |
| Y             | 186 mph      |

 For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph, tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph, tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**[1] TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (TIN):** (Also known as 'DOT Code') The Tire Identification Number (TIN) begins with the letters 'DOT' and shows that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**[2] TIRE TYPE:** •M+S or M/S

Mud and Snow

- AT  
All Terrain
- AS  
All Season.

**[3] TIRE PLY COMPOSITION AND MATERIAL USED:** Shows the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must show the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

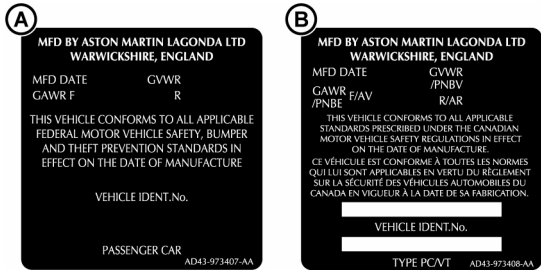
**[4] MAXIMUM LOAD:** Shows the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**[5] TREAD WEAR, TRACTION AND TEMPERATURE GRADES:** (Refer to page 11.13).

**[6] MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE INFLATION PRESSURE:** (Refer to page 11.17)

### Vehicle Loading

Correctly loading this vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading this vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining the vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label (A (USA) (B (Canada))).

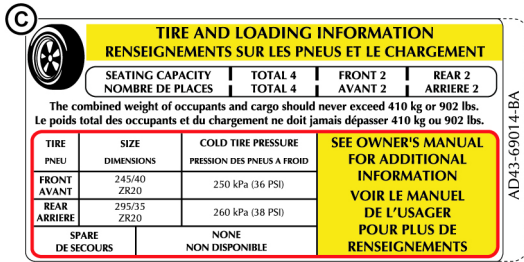


**MFD Date:** Month and Year the vehicle was manufactured (e.g. 01 / 06 = January 2006)

**GVWR:** Gross vehicle weight (curb weight + full payload)

**GAWR F:** Maximum load on the front axle

**GAWR R:** Maximum load on the rear axle  
or the Tire label (C).



**Seating Capacity:** Shows the maximum number of passengers.

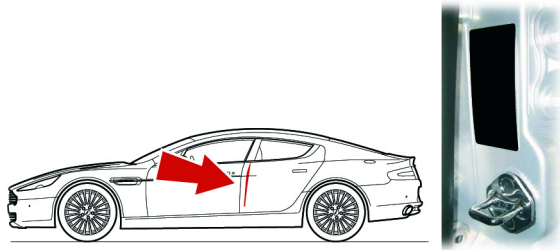
**Payload:** Make sure that the payload (cargo + passengers) does not exceed this limit.

**Tire sizes:** The size of tires to be used on this vehicle.

**Cold inflation pressure:** The maximum recommended tire inflation pressure.

The illustrations shown are examples and may not accurately describe the labels on this vehicle.

Both labels are located on the vehicle door opening edge.



**Payload:** The payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the edge of the driver's door. Look for 'The Combined Weight of Occupants and Cargo Should Never Exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb' for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any after market or Aston Martin Dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new pay load.

### Gross Vehicle Weight

The maximum recommended weight for a vehicle, including: the weight of the vehicle itself, fuel and other fluids, passengers, and all cargo.

### Determining the Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement 'The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb' on the vehicle's tire label.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the 'XXX' amount equals 661 lb and there will be four 150 lb passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 61lb (661–600 (4x150) = 61 lb). In metric units (300–272 (4x68) = 28 kg.).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

### Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

The maximum permissible inflation pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and / or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

 *The recommended cold inflation tire pressures for this vehicle can also be found in the specifications chapter of this owner's guidebook (Refer to 'Tyres', page 12.5)*

## Safety Practices

**⚠ Warning:** *If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.*

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits.
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road.
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important. If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you can not detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tire Terminology

**Tire Label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

**Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

**Inflation Pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

**Standard Load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35psi [37psi (2.5bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**Extra Load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41psi [43psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**kPa:** Kilo pascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

**PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

**Cold Inflation Pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sun light for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6km).

**Recommended Inflation Pressure:** : The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label (found on the edge of the driver's door).

**Bead Area of the Tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

**Sidewall of the Tire:** : Area between the bead area and the tread.



## Winter Tyres

**Tread Area of the Tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

The tyres installed as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tyres will considerably improve handling during these conditions.

Only use Aston Martin approved winter tyres.

**⚠ Warning:** *Maximum speed with winter tyres is 270 km/h.*

Winter tyres must be used in vehicle sets, that is, installed on all four wheels. Do not exceed the tyre speed rating when using winter tyres.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Snow Chains

**⚠ Warning:** *The maximum speed when using snow chains is 48 km/h. Remove the snow chains immediately the roads are clear of snow*

These are available from your Aston Martin Dealer for temporary use when driving in heavy snow conditions. Snow chains should only be installed to the rear (driven) wheels.

 *Make sure that the installation instructions supplied with the snow chains are kept in a safe place.*

## Tyre Sealant Kit

**⚠ Warning:** *Do not use the system to seal a tyre that was damaged while driving with insufficient air pressure (e.g. tyre cuts, cracks, bumps or similar damage). Do not use the system to seal tyres with side wall damage. Only punctures in the tread area of tyres may be sealed.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the side wall of the tyre. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage set the compressor to OFF. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.*

**⚠ Warning:** *If a tyre pressure of 1.8 bar cannot be reached then the tyre can not be sealed. Do not attempt to re-inflate the tyre. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.*

**⚠ Warning:** *If the pressure in the tyre after driving for 3 km is below 1.3 bar the tyre has not been effectively sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.*

**⚠ Warning:** *After a longer period of rest, the tyre pressure should be rechecked.*

 ***The tyre sealant kit only provides temporary mobility. Always refer to local laws and regulations on the use and repair of tyres that have been treated with any form of temporary mobility aid. Consult a tyre specialist for advice.***

 *Inform the tyre specialist that the tyre contains sealant.*

## Operation

Remove the tyre sealant kit from its location in the boot. Follow the instructions detailed on the lid.

Read the following instructions and warnings carefully before using the tyre sealant kit. Compliance with these instructions is vital to make sure of vehicle and user safety. Noncompliance with these instructions means risking severe tyre damage and hazardous vehicle behaviour which can lead to a road accident involving damage to property or injury to persons.

- Make sure that the vehicle is parked far enough from traffic so that there is no danger from passing vehicles and so that you do not disrupt the traffic. Warn other vehicles using the warning triangle.

- The system should only be used between temperatures of – 40°C and 70°C.
- A maximum speed of 80 km/h may not be exceeded at any time after sealing the tyre with the system.
- The system provides only a **temporary emergency repair** for continuing the journey up to 200 km or to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer.
- If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is over a 200 km away arrange for collection under the Aston Martin Emergency Service scheme.
- The system will effectively seal a tyre that was punctured by an object with a diameter of up to 6 mm. It is possible that a tyre, especially with greater damage, will not be sealed. Do not remove objects that punctured the tyre if they are still lodged in the tyre.
- The sealant bottle needs to be exchanged before it expires. **Do not** use the system after the expiry date on the sealant bottle or casing has been reached. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.
- Do not attempt to inflate other objects without using a system adapter and do not inflate objects with a volume greater than 50 litre (air mattresses, rubber boats, etc.). Do not let the system pump air for more than 10 minutes without stopping it and allowing it to cool down.

Both the hose and the bottle of sealant need to be replaced after using the system. Sealant deposits in a used hose may cause the system to operate incorrectly. New bottles of sealant can be purchased from your Aston Martin Dealer.

Dispose of empty sealant bottles together with normal household waste.

Remains of liquid sealant must be handed over to your dealer or disposed of in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## Vehicle Recovery

⚠ **When moving the vehicle by transporter make sure that the vehicle is not strapped down to the transporter by the suspension control arms.**

⚠ **Power braking and power steering are not available with the engine OFF. Substantially higher brake pedal pressures and steering effort are required.**

⚠ **If there is a transmission fault, this vehicle must be transported.**

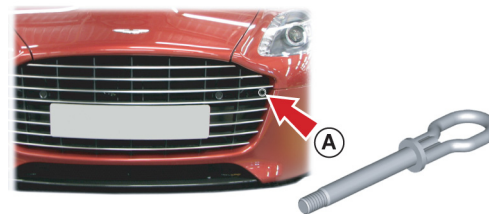
Your vehicle should always be recovered on a vehicle transporter<sup>1</sup> and should only be towed for **short distances**, for example, if it is causing an obstruction or if it requires winching onto a transporter. If the park brake was applied and the vehicle has lost power, the park brake will not release. Call Aston Martin assistance.

---

<sup>1</sup> The recommended method for a recovering vehicle is to have it transported in a purpose built, covered, vehicle transporter.

If moving the vehicle in such a situation:

1. Remove the towing eye from its storage location in the vehicle tool kit (located in the boot storage area). Insert the towing eye carefully through the grill and install to the exposed female threads (A) until fully engaged against the vehicle body.



📖 *The towing eye has a left hand thread.*

Protect vehicle paint work when installing the towing eye.

2. If possible put the transmission into neutral. If the transmission has gone into parklock operate the parklock override lever. Move the vehicle key to position 'II' (ignition ON) to release the steering lock.

3. When being towed use the footbrake very gently as required to prevent excessive slack in the tow rope.

### Parklock Override

⚠ **If the vehicle has power - apply the park brake before operating the parklock override lever. If the vehicle has no power - make sure that at least one wheel is prevented from moving, for example, by placing a chock (block of wood, large stone, etc.) at the front and rear of the tyre. There is the danger that the vehicle will roll, depending on the incline of the road.**

⚠ **The warning message, GEARBOX FAULT, PARKLOCK FAILURE, in the message centre (right) must go OFF and the GPID must change from N to P. Otherwise there is the danger that the vehicle will roll away.**

If the vehicle fails to start or has broken down the automatic transmission will move into P (park). To tow or move the vehicle use the parklock override lever to manually unlock the automatic transmission parklock.

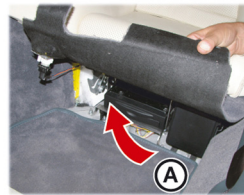
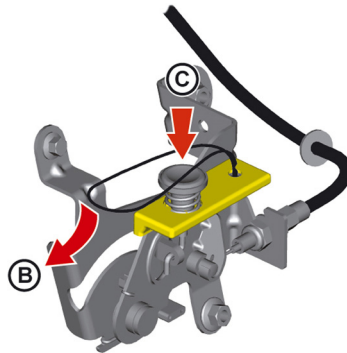
If the park brake was applied and the vehicle has lost power, the park brake will not release. Call Aston Martin assistance.

## Operating the Parklock Override

Make sure that the vehicle can not roll, apply the park brake (power available) or make sure that at least one wheel is prevented from moving, for example, by placing a chock (block of wood, large stone, etc.) at the front and rear of the tyre.

In the rear left passenger footwell (A) lift the floor carpet where it meets the heel board, to show the two screws holding the heel board trim in place. Remove the two screws. Raise the heel board trim panel to access the parklock override lever.

Pull the parklock override lever (B) fully up on the ratchet, fully releasing the parklock.



After towing or moving make sure that the vehicle can not roll.

Lift the parklock override lever slightly and press the ratchet release button (C). With the ratchet release button pressed lower the parklock override lever back to the stop. The parklock is now locked. Install the the park override lever cover and the rear seat base or trim panel.

## Battery Disconnect Switch

**⚠ Before the battery disconnect switch is pressed make sure that all door windows have dropped (open a left and right side door). If the windows have not dropped before the power is disconnected they may damage the door seals when a door is opened. The door windows must be reset once the battery connect switch has been pressed (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.35).**

Your vehicle has a Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS) and a Battery Connect Switch (BCS). For transportation it will be necessary for the recovery operator to disconnect the vehicle battery.

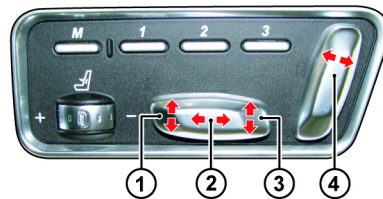
Before the BDS or the BCS is pressed make sure the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

Remove the two screws that secure the heel board carpet trim panel in the rear left passenger footwell (C). Raise the heel board trim panel to access the two switches. To set all vehicle electrics to OFF press the BDS (A). To set the electrical systems ON press the BCS (B).



### Front Seat Reset

If the vehicle key is not removed from the ignition control before the BDS is pressed and a front seat(s) have been adjusted at the start of the journey, the front seats may need to be reset. To reset a front seat:



1. Press the seat forward button (2) until the seat is fully forward.
2. Press the seat back button (4) until the seat back is fully backwards.
3. Press the seat down button (1) until the front of the seat is fully down.
4. Press the seat down button (3) until the rear of the seat is fully down.

### Jump Start From Another Vehicle

**⚠ Warning: The donor vehicle must have a 12 volt battery and a negative (-), black earth terminal to make sure that the correct battery polarity is maintained.**

**! Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.**

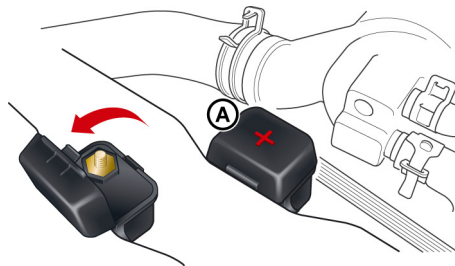
**! If the voltage or earth of the donor vehicle is different or not known, do not attempt starting in the way described.**

If this vehicle will not start due to a discharged battery, it may be started, **for vehicle recovery**, by connecting the battery from another vehicle (donor) to this vehicle (recipient).

## Jump Start Procedure

- ⚠ **Remove rings, metal watch bands and any other jewellery.**
- ⚠ **Set all electrical motors and ancillaries in both vehicles to OFF.**
- ⚠ **Set all lamps to OFF except those needed to protect vehicles or illuminate the work area.**

1. Position the donor vehicle so that the connecting cables will reach into the recipient engine bay. Apply the park brake and set the ignition to OFF.
2. Access the jump start terminal in the recipient engine bay.
3. Connect the positive (red) cable between the positive (red) terminal of the donor battery and the jump start terminal of the recipient vehicle (A).



4. Connect the negative (black) cable between the negative (black) terminal of the donor battery and a good earth (negative) point in the recipient engine bay (i.e. alternator mounting bracket).
5. Start the donor vehicle engine and run at about 1500 – 2000 rpm.
6. Start the engine of the recipient vehicle.

7. Once both vehicles are running remove the jump start cables, first the negative (black) cable from both vehicles and then the positive (red) cable from both vehicles.  
Allow the recipient engine to run until the discharged battery is sufficiently recharged (15 to 20 minutes) to start the engine without assistance. Set the engine to OFF and restart the engine. Take the vehicle on a long run to fully charge the battery. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

*Recharge time will depend on the initial 'state of health' of discharged battery.*

*If this vehicle will not start consult your Aston Martin Dealer.*

## Vehicle Battery

**⚠ Warning:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always have sufficient ventilation.

**⚠ Warning:** When lifting a plastic cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury, damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**⚠ Warning:** Keep batteries out of reach of children.

**⚠ Warning:** Batteries contain sulphuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, get medical help immediately.

**⚠ The engine must never be run with the vehicle battery disconnected.**

**⚠ Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.**

The vehicle battery is located under the rear right seat. It is maintenance free and should only require checking by your Aston Martin Dealer during regular vehicle services.

## Vehicle Battery Disposal

It is the responsibility of the vehicle owner when disposing of automotive batteries to do it in an environmentally correct manner. The incorrect disposal of a vehicle (lead-acid) battery can be extremely hazardous to health and the environment. Most batteries contain heavy metals and when disposed of incorrectly, these heavy metals may leak into the ground. This can contribute to soil and water pollution and endanger wildlife.

Follow your local authorised standards for disposal. Call your local authorised recycling centre to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Do not dispose of your vehicle battery in the household waste.



## Warnings

The following warnings are located on the vehicle battery.



## Vehicle Battery Charge

Various systems, for example, the clock, security systems and Infotainment centre system continue to drain battery power even with the ignition OFF.

A **new fully charged** battery has the ability to start this vehicle, if left unused, for up to 45 days without a battery conditioner being used.

In cold climates this time may be reduced.

Aston Martin recommend that if this vehicle is to be left unused for ten (10) days or more a battery conditioner (mains power available) should be used.

Battery charge can be drained excessively in a number of ways:

- If the vehicle is unused for long periods of time
- If the vehicle is used regularly but only for short journeys, e.g. less than 48 km a journey
- If electrical systems are in use without the vehicle engine running
- If the vehicle key is left in the ignition control for long periods of time without the engine operating

Excessive battery drain would ultimately mean that the battery would not be able to start the engine.

## Battery Conditioner

Optional

**Warning: Do not attempt to start the vehicle with a battery conditioner connected to the mains supply.**

**Warning: Do not smoke. Prevent flames and sparks. Explosive gasses are given off by batteries during charging.**

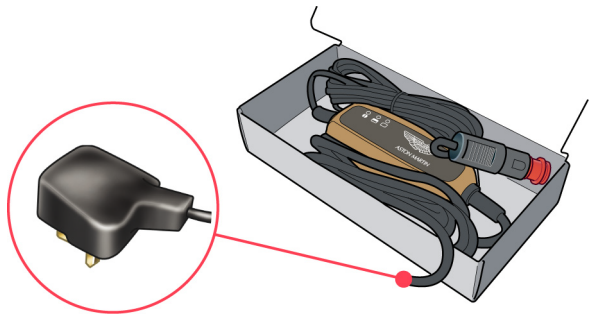
**A battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.**

**For indoor use only. Disconnect mains supply before making or breaking battery connections.**

The Aston Martin battery conditioner (option) is suitable for use on all types of 12 volt lead acid batteries.

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is available**, use a battery conditioner to maintain the battery charge level.





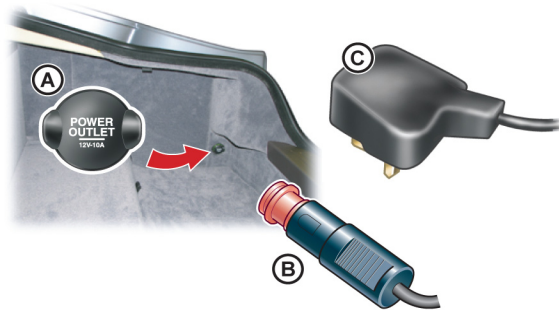
When connected the battery conditioner will maintain a small trickle charge to keep the battery in a fully charged state. The battery conditioner may be left in this state indefinitely.

#### To Connect a Battery Conditioner

1. Insert the accessory socket plug (B) into the accessory socket (A (located in the boot right side)).
2. Insert the mains plug (C) into the mains supply.
3. Gently close, but do not latch, the boot lid. This avoids possible damage to the boot lid water seal from the battery conditioner power cable.



With the boot lid left open the vehicle doors can be locked and armed.



To remove the battery conditioner first disconnect from the mains supply, then from the vehicle socket.

## Battery Protection Mode

**! Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.**

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down nonessential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

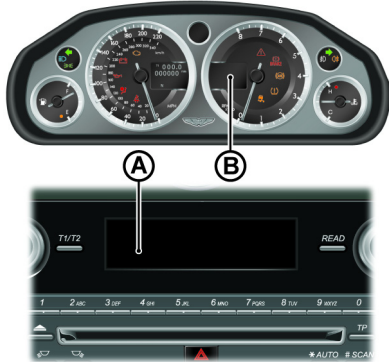
### Frequently Asked Questions

**What is the first sign of battery protection mode?**

Two messages will show:

**[A] : WARNING - LOW BATTERY** (For 10 seconds).

**[B] : LOW BATTERY**



### What should I do next?

Set all unnecessary electrical systems to OFF to reduce battery drain. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

### What happens if I ignore the warning messages?

After approximately two to ten minutes (dependent on the rate of battery charge drain) the following messages will show:

**[A] : INFOTAINMENT WILL BE SHUT DOWN 2 MINUTES** (For 10 seconds).

**[B] : LOW BATTERY POWER SAVE.**

If the audio system is ON the sound will mute for 10 seconds and a short 'Beep' will be heard when the message is first shown.

### What should I do if these messages are shown?

Set all unnecessary electrical systems to OFF. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

### What happens if I ignore second warning messages?

The infotainment system will shut down in two minutes. No other electrical system will be shut down. This significantly reduces the rate of battery drain. The following functionality will be lost:

- CD Player
- Navigation System
- Radio Tuner

### What should I do if the infotainment system shuts down?

Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

The infotainment system will not operate without the engine running until the battery has regained its charge. With the engine running the infotainment system will start up.

### What is a reasonable length of time to run the engine?

The vehicle battery normally requires a journey of approximately 48 km to recharge. Additionally, use the battery conditioner to restore the vehicle battery charge.

### What if I cannot restart the engine?

If the battery has been run down to a point where it will not start the engine then an external battery charger<sup>1</sup> will be required or your vehicle will require a 'jump start' (Refer to 'Jump Start From Another Vehicle', page 11.23).

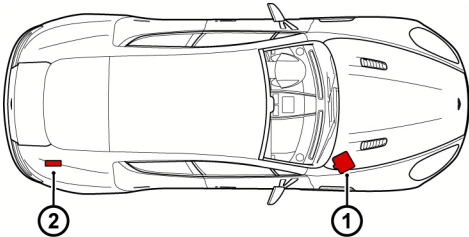
<sup>1</sup>. A battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.

# Fuse Boxes

The electrical system is protected by fuses. If any lamps, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector.

If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted. If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.

## Fuse Box Location



[1] : Engine bay fuse box (passenger side).

[2] : Boot fuse box.



## Engine Bay Fuse Box

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                    |
|------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| F1   | 10A    | ECU B keep alive power                                      |
| F2   | 10A    | Not available                                               |
| F3   | 10 A   | Not available                                               |
| F4   | 20A    | ECU A                                                       |
| F5   | 20A    | ECU B                                                       |
| F6   | 15A    | Heated oxygen and catalyst sensors (front and rear, bank B) |
| F7   | 15A    | Ignition coils 7 to 12 (bank B)                             |
| F8   | 10A    | Engine coolant sensor                                       |
| F9   | 20A    | Injectors 7 to 12 (bank B) / MAF sensor                     |
| F10  | 10A    | Air conditioner compressor clutch                           |

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                    | Fuse | Rating | Function                                                |
|------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| F11  | 15A    | Horns                                                       | F22  | 5A     | Not available                                           |
| F12  | 10A    | ECU A keep alive power                                      | F23  |        |                                                         |
| F13  | 20A    | Injectors 1 to 6 (bank A) / MAF sensor / Oil level sensor   | F24  | 5A     | Not available                                           |
| F14  | 10A    | Vapour management valve                                     | F25  | 5A     | Not available                                           |
| F15  | 25A    | Starter motor solenoid                                      | F26  | 20A    | Headlamp wash pump                                      |
| F16  | 15A    | Ignition coils 1 to 6 (bank A)                              | F27  | 25A    | Not available                                           |
| F17  | 15A    | Not available                                               | F28  | 10A    | ABS Module / Steering angle sensor / Vehicle key reader |
| F18  | 15A    | Heated oxygen and catalyst sensors (front and rear, bank A) | F29  | 25A    | Not available                                           |
| F19  | 40A    | ABS Module                                                  | F30  | 5A     | ABS Module                                              |
| F20  | 20A    | ABS Module                                                  | F31  | 30A    | Not available                                           |
| F21  | 30A    | Not available                                               | F32  | 30A    | Windscreen motor (slow)                                 |
|      |        |                                                             | F33  | 30A    | Windscreen motor (Fast)                                 |
|      |        |                                                             | F34  | 15A    | Electric steering column lock                           |
|      |        |                                                             | F35  | 80A    | Cooling fan                                             |

**Boot Fuse Box**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                   |
|------|--------|--------------------------------------------|
| F1   | 5A     | Not available                              |
| F2   | 20A    | Automatic transmission module              |
| F3   | 30A    | Heated rear windscreen                     |
| F4   | 20A    | Wireless headphones transmitter and module |
| F5   | 30A    | Audio amplifier / Audio power              |
| F6   | 5A     | Audio amplifier / MOST (wake up)           |
| F7   | 5A     | Rear seat entertainment module             |
| F8   | 10A    | Rear left seat back release                |
| F9   | 10A    | Rear right seat back release               |
| F10  | 25A    | Rear right door module                     |
| F11  | 5A     | Not available                              |

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                                                                                             |
|------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F12  | 10A    | Not available                                                                                                                        |
| F13  | 15A    | Not available                                                                                                                        |
| F14  | 5A     | Rear right interior lamp / Front right and left boot lamp / Rear accessory socket illumination / Rear right seat back release switch |
| F15  | 5A     | Rear footwell lamp / Boot lamp                                                                                                       |
| F16  | 25A    | Rear accessory socket                                                                                                                |
| F17  | 5A     | Battery disconnect switch                                                                                                            |
| F18  | 30A    | Audio amplifier / MOST [B+]                                                                                                          |
| F19  | 5A     | DVD changer module / Satellite radio tuner                                                                                           |
| F20  | 15A    | Rear right seat heater                                                                                                               |
| F21  | 25A    | Front right door module                                                                                                              |
| F22  | 15A    | Rear left seat heater                                                                                                                |

## Headlamp

**⚠ Warning: High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs produce a very high voltage. They should only be serviced by an Aston Martin Dealership.**

High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs are used for the combined main and dipped beam. HID systems produce a brilliant white light by establishing a high voltage electrical arc between two electrodes within a sealed glass tube. Once the arc is established, the voltage lowers to normal operating conditions.

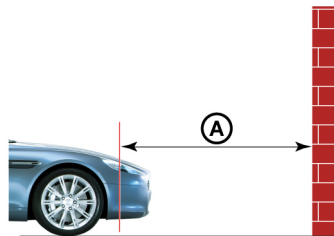
HID bulbs are not renewable.

Contact to your Aston Martin Dealer if a HID bulb fails to operate.

**📖 Headlamp Units: Condensation:** The headlamp units will generate condensation under certain conditions. However, this should clear after approximately 10 minutes after the headlamps have been set to ON.

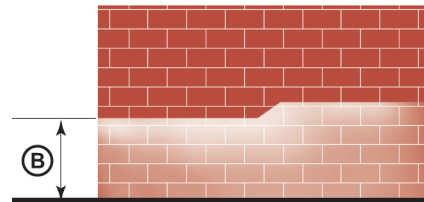
## Headlamp Alignment

Headlamp vertical aim check and adjustment must be completed with the vehicle parked on a flat surface with the headlamps facing a vertical wall at a distance of 25 ft to the outboard internal lens (A), with no additional loads in the vehicle.



### How to Check

Set the dipped beam to ON. Measure the height of the left side of the beam pattern projected onto the wall. This should measure 24.80 in (B) in from the ground for a correctly aimed lamp. This must be completed for both right and left headlamps.



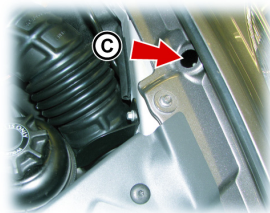
## How to Adjust

Should either headlamp require adjustment:

Remove the cover. Adjust the headlamp vertical aim by turning the adjuster (C) using a phillips screwdriver or a 1/4 in allen key.

Check the vertical beam aim by reversing the vehicle backwards 12 ft and repeating the check procedure. The beam height should have reduced by 1 in.

Replace the cover.



## Other External Lamps

 LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.

### High Level Stop Lamp

The high level mounted stop lamp unit consists of LEDs and is not repairable. If a high level mounted stop lamp LED fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

### Front Indicator, Parking and Side Marker Lamps

If a front indicator, parking or side marker lamp fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer. These lamps consist of LEDs and are not repairable.

### Side Indicators

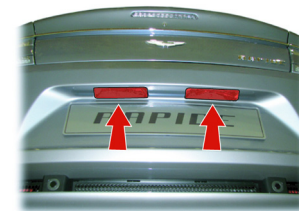
The side indicators comprise of five LEDs in each front wing side strake and are not repairable. If a side indicator LED fails, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Registration Plate Lamps

To change a registration plate bulb:

Take care not to damage the vehicle trim.

Use a small flat blade screwdriver to lever out, from the right side, the lens unit. Twist, counterclockwise, and withdraw the bulb holder, remove the defective bulb and replace with a new one (Rating: 5W Type: C5W). Twist the bulb holder back into in position. Replace the boot trim panel.



## Rear Lamp Clusters

The rear indicators, stop and tail, reversing lamps and rear fog LEDs are contained in a sealed lamp cluster unit, one either side of the vehicle. The lamp cluster is not repairable, if a rear lamp fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Boot Lamps

The boot illumination comprises of four LEDs, two each side of the boot area and are not repairable.

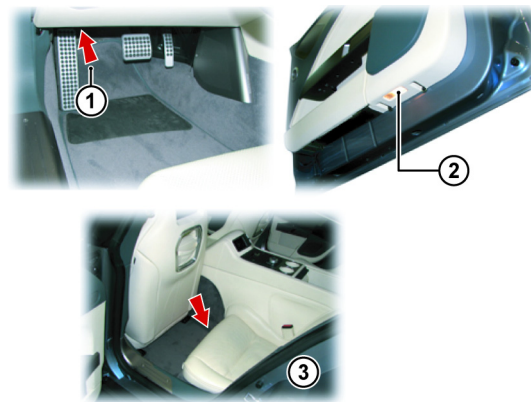
If a boot LED fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.

## Internal Lamps

The puddle lamps on each door and the front and rear footwell lamps are bulbs which can be renewed. All other internal lamps are LEDs which are not repairable. If an LED lamp fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.



[1] : Front footwell lamps

[2] : Rear footwell lamps

[3] : Door puddle lamps

[4] : Front reading lamps

[5] : Rear reading lamps

To renew a bulb:

1. Take care not to damage the vehicle trim.
2. Lever out the lens unit and replace the faulty bulb.

### Door puddle lamps only:

1. Open the access flap and replace the faulty bulb.
2. Press the lens unit into its housing until it clips into position.



## Door Window Reset

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset.

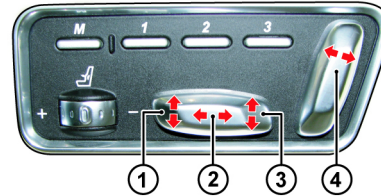
1. Sit in the driver's seat with all doors closed, insert the vehicle key into the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).
2. Press firmly and hold the window switch until the window is at the maximum down position. Continue to hold the button for five seconds then release.
3. Pull back and hold the window switch until the window is in the maximum up position. Continue to hold the switch for a further five seconds, then release.
4. The window is now reset. Repeat for the other door windows.

## Front Seat Reset

Should a front seat fail to move or the seat memory position fails to work this may show a loss of seat position in the vehicle's memory. If so, complete the seat reset procedure detailed below:

**⚠ Warning: Do not sit in the seat while you do the seat reset procedure. Seat movement will restrict the occupancy area.**

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during the seat reset procedure.**



1. Press the seat forward button (2) until the seat is fully forward.
2. Press the seat back button (4) until the seat back is fully backwards.
3. Press the seat down button (1) until the front of the seat is fully down.
4. Press the seat down button (3) until the rear of the seat is fully down.

The seat movement and position memory should now work correctly, if not contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Bodywork Maintenance

### Door Drain Holes

Check the drain holes in the bottom face of each door periodically and clear if necessary with, for example, a short length of wire or a pipe cleaner.

## Vehicle Cleaning

### Paint Work

Modern water based paints are much safer and more environmentally friendly than solvent based paints. Water based paints are however more susceptible to contamination and marking by corrosive substances. The following list is not exhaustive but does show the most common contaminants which may adversely affect your paint work:

 *Other groups of contaminants may be added to this list as experience of water based paints and finishes increases.*

- Bird Droppings
- Antifreeze
- Tree Sap
- Oils and Greases
- Insect Remains

Wash such substances from the vehicle using clean warm water with vehicle shampoo, at the earliest opportunity, especially in sunny weather which can accelerate contamination.

### Washing

 **Warning: Washing and polishing agents containing silicone should not be applied to glass. This will reduce the efficiency of the windscreen wipers, causing smears which will reduce visibility, particularly during darkness and in the rain.**

 **Commercially operated automatic vehicle washes, jet washes and power operated mops are not recommended. The detergents used can contain certain chemicals which may, over time, be detrimental to some exterior parts of the vehicle. Prolonged usage of automatic vehicle washes and power operated mops will also cause fine scratches in the paint surface.**

Aston Martin recommends the use of AUTOGLYM vehicle care products or preparations of similar reputable manufacture for adding to the washing water. Make sure that the manufacture's instructions are followed.

During the winter months, it is advisable to wash the vehicle more frequently, paying particular attention to the underside to combat the detrimental effects of any salt and sand contamination picked up from treated roads.

To delay the onset of corrosion developing on the brake components Aston Martin recommend that after washing this vehicle, the vehicle should be driven a short distance to make sure that all the water and washing product has dried off.

For best results:

Do not wash the vehicle in strong sunlight. Let the vehicle cool before washing.

Do not use household soaps or detergents.

Do not direct water hoses at full force around the door and boot lid seals.

Do not use a brush on the car body as this will leave little scratches.

Suggested washing method:

1. Fill two buckets with water. To one bucket add a mild neutral detergent, as directed by the detergent manufacturer.
2. Hose the vehicle to remove all dust and mud residue. Don't use a strong jet, as this can rub grit over the paint and scratch it.

3. Soak a large wash mitt or a soft sponge in the soapy water, make sure to wash out any dirt in it, and begin applying it to the vehicle. Wash the vehicle section by section, starting at the top. Circle around the car several times, washing lower areas with each round.
4. Rinse the dirt out of the wash mitt or soft sponge in the bucket with plain water frequently.
5. After one section is washed, rinse it with the hose before moving on, don't let the soap dry on the paint and stain it. Always keep the vehicle wet, this will prevent droplets from drying on the paint and leaving water-spots.
6. Dry the car with a chamois leather before it air-dries.

#### **Front Grille**

Wash and clean the vehicle's front grille in the same way as the paint work, but make sure that the front grille is dried off completely leaving no water droplets on the grille (wipe the front grille last using a chamois leather): Chrome polish or other abrasive cleaners must not be used.

#### **Road Wheels**

To avoid possible damage to the alloy road wheels, wheel nuts & wheel centre trims, from a build up of brake dust wash and clean the alloy road wheels frequently, using a mild soapy water solution only. Do not use chemical alloy road wheel cleaners, as they can often have a high acid or alkaline content and could cause discolouration. Always clean one wheel at a time and do not allow the cleaning solution to dry on the wheel. Fully flush off with clean water.

#### **Headlamp Lenses**

Only use a mild soapy water solution when washing the Headlamp Lenses. Do not use cleaning materials which contain solvents. Cleaning materials which contain solvents, i.e. tar remover, petrol, waxes or polishes, may damage the headlamp lens.

#### **Polishing**

Approximately twice a year, a good quality polish should be applied to the body work and then buffed, using a soft lint free cloth. The alloy wheel rims should be treated with a cleaner which is specifically manufactured for this purpose.

## Upholstery, Trim, Carpets and Seats

**⚠ Warning: Fumes from cleaning solvents may be dangerous in confined spaces. Make sure that the vehicle is well ventilated and follow the manufacturer's printed instructions when using these products.**

**⚠ Certain types of clothing, such as denim and vegetable tanned leather, are prone to 'dye transfer'. This can cause discolouration in the leather. Make sure that the affected areas are cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.**

The seats and soft trimmed components of this vehicle are covered in natural leather hide. In general, this natural leather upholstery requires little attention. The seats should be brushed with a soft brush from time to time and may be cleaned occasionally with a cloth dampened in soap and water.

**Do not** use detergents, quick cleansers or furniture polishes. These products may give an initially impressive result, but their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty. Several times a year, a leather conditioner or preservative should be used. Appropriate care materials are obtainable from your Aston Martin Dealer.

Alcantara roof linings and other soft trimmed areas may be brushed with a soft brush. Stains from water based substances such as coffee, tea or soft drinks should be cleaned as soon as possible with mild soap and water.

The brushed and anodised aluminium trim should be cleaned using a dry clean lint free cloth.

Consult your Aston Martin Dealer for instructions on the removal of more difficult stains such as oil, grease or ballpoint ink.

Carpets should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Any stains or grease marks should be removed with a good quality solvent suitable for use on carpets.

### Care and Maintenance of Seat Belts

**⚠ Do not allow seat belts to be retracted until they are completely dry.**

To make sure that the restraint webbings are in correct working order, regularly check the seat belts. Look for fraying, cuts, burns and similar problems. Make sure that the latches and buckles operate correctly. If a seat belt is not in good condition or is not working correctly, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Any seat belt that has been worn during a serious collision should be replaced by an Aston Martin Dealer.

To clean the seat belts, use mild soap and water; do not use bleach, solvents or dyes as they can weaken the material. Allow the seat belts to dry thoroughly before use.

### Under Bonnet Cleaning

Under bonnet cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should not be carried out. The electronic control module connections and fuse boxes can be damaged by indiscriminate use of high pressure cleaning equipment.

## Vehicle Storage

### Recommendations

 *These recommendations apply to new and pre-owned vehicles either in dealer or customer ownership.*

If your vehicle is not to be used for periods in excess of three months it should be stored in a dry, well ventilated building.

1. Drive the vehicle for a sufficient distance to warm the oil in the engine and the transaxle; make sure that the internal components of the engine are lubricated.
2. Check the engine coolant level. Top up if necessary with the correct antifreeze and water solution.
3. In order to take the weight off the tyres, raise the vehicle with a jack and place supports under the front and rear suspension. If the vehicle is not raised from the ground, increase the tyre pressures to 3.4 bar. Cover the tyres to exclude any light. Turn the wheels ¼ turn every month to avoid tyre flat spots.
4. If mains power is available, use a battery conditioner to maintain the battery in a fully charged state.
5. Once a month:
  - 5.1 Disconnect the battery conditioner (if installed).
  - 5.2 Start and operate the engine until it is fully warmed up.

- 5.3 Check there are no fluid leaks.
- 5.4 Set the ignition to OFF.
- 5.5 Connect a battery conditioner.
- 5.6 Check and correct tyre pressures if necessary. When returning the vehicle to normal service, set the tyre pressures to normal specification before driving on the road.

 *Excessive sunlight and humidity can increase the vehicle temperature, which can cause damage to the vehicle interior and trim. If storing the vehicle in these conditions, Aston Martin recommend using a solar reflecting car cover to prevent any potential damage due to high temperatures.*

### Extended Storage

For storage periods exceeding six months the following measures are recommended:

 *Do not drain fuel system.*

1. Operate the engine until there is as small a quantity of fuel in the tank as is practical for storage purposes.

2. Add engine oil to the remaining fuel in the tank to make a concentration of 2% (i.e. 20 ml per one ltr of fuel), then operate engine for not less than ten minutes to circulate the mixture thoroughly through all of the fuel system.
3. Inspect rubber connections of coolant system and have them renewed if necessary.
4. Wash the vehicle bodywork thoroughly and repair any paint blisters or patches of corrosion in order to prevent any further deterioration. Apply a suitable polish.
5. Clean the carpets and upholstery thoroughly. Treat all leather upholstery with an application of a leather conditioner or preservative.
6. If the storage building is dry leave vehicle windows slightly open. If there is any tendency towards dampness close vehicle doors and windows and place an anti-moisture compound such as silica desiccant bags in an open metal container inside vehicle.
7. Cover vehicle with a cotton or fabric cover.

## Recommissioning after Storage

Provided that the vehicle has been stored in accordance with the recommended procedure, only the following points should need attention before using your vehicle on the road.

**! Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Make sure that the engine oil pressure is established before the engine starts.**

1. Check the tyre pressures, inflate if necessary, lower the vehicle to ground.
2. Drain the engine oil and install a new engine oil filter element. Fill the engine to its maximum level (as shown on the dip stick) with approved oil.
3. Drain the final drive unit. Fill the final drive unit to its maximum level (oil will dribble out of the fill hole), with approved oil.
4. Check the coolant level and, if necessary, top up with the correct antifreeze to water solution.
5. Check all fluid levels and top up as necessary.
6. Fill the fuel tank.

**! Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Make sure that the engine oil pressure is established before allowing the engine to start.**

7. Obtain engine oil pressure:
  - 7.1 Press and hold the accelerator pedal hard to the floor (this temporarily stops fuel injection during cranking).
  - 7.2 Fully press the brake pedal down. Insert the vehicle key into the ignition control and move through to engine start. Let the engine to crank until the oil pressure symbol  (in the instrument cluster) goes OFF (showing oil pressure in the engine).
  - 7.3 Set the ignition to OFF. Release the vehicle key and accelerator pedal.
8. Start the engine normally and check that the oil pressure and ignition warning symbols go OFF as the engine starts (correct oil pressure and battery charging).
9. Raise the bonnet and check for leaks of fuel, oil and coolant.
10. Carefully test drive your vehicle and check the operation of all functions.

Braking performance can be impaired, initially, due to a fine film of corrosion on the brake disc surface. Drive conservatively and, when safe to do so, frequently apply the brakes until disc surfaces have been cleaned. Full braking performance should then be restored.

If in any doubt about the condition of your vehicle, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

# Specifications

|                        |      |                             |      |
|------------------------|------|-----------------------------|------|
| Engine.....            | 12.2 | Wheels.....                 | 12.4 |
| Performance .....      | 12.2 | Tyres .....                 | 12.5 |
| Power and Torque ..... | 12.2 | Bulbs.....                  | 12.6 |
| Transmission .....     | 12.3 | Vehicle Specification ..... | 12.6 |
| Electrics.....         | 12.3 | Vehicle Weights .....       | 12.6 |
| Steering.....          | 12.3 | Interior Dimensions.....    | 12.7 |
| Suspension.....        | 12.4 | Exterior Dimensions .....   | 12.7 |
| Brakes.....            | 12.4 | Vehicle Features.....       | 12.8 |
|                        |      | Fluids and Capacities.....  | 12.8 |

## Engine

All alloy, quad overhead cam 48 valve V12

**Fuel:** Recommended 98 RON Super Unleaded for optimum performance. 95 RON minimum.

**Fuel Delivery System:** Multi point sequential fuel injection.

**Capacity:** 5935 cc

**Firing Order:** 1 - 7 - 5 - 11 - 3 - 9 - 6 - 12 - 2 - 8 - 4 - 10

**Idle Speed:** 650 rpm

**Bore:** 89.0 mm (3.504 in)

**Stroke:** 79.5 mm (3.13 in)

**Spark Plugs:** NGK: PTR6E-13

**Spark Plug Gap:** 1.3 mm  $\pm$  0.1 mm

**Compression Ratio:** 10.7:1

**Ignition:** 'Coil on Plug' ignition system.

**Emission Control:** Eight Oxygen sensors (four per exhaust branch).

Two three-way catalytic convertors (one per exhaust branch).

Evaporative loss purge

**Lubrication:** Wet sump pressurised lubrication.

## Performance

**Maximum Power:** 550 bhp @ 6750 rpm

**Maximum Torque:** 443 lb.ft @ 5000 rpm

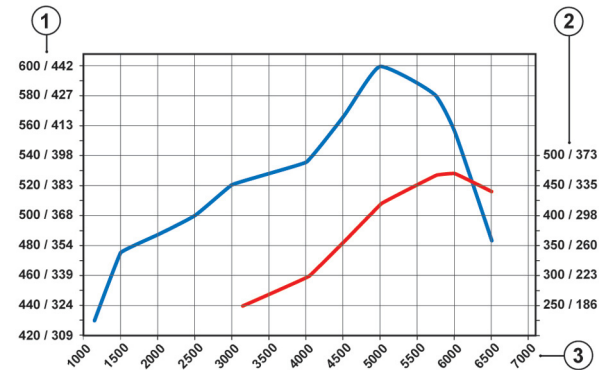
**Maximum Speed:** 190 mph<sub>1</sub>

**0-62 mph:** 4.9 seconds

**Maximum Engine Speed:** 6850 rpm

<sub>1</sub>. Where permitted.

## Power and Torque



[1] : Torque (Nm / lb/ft)

[2] : Power (kw / bhp)

[3] : Engine speed (rpm)



## Transmission

### Automatic Transmission

ZF 6HP26 six speed with ‘Shift by Wire’ (SBW) gear shift technology.

### Gear Ratios

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| 1st     | 4.17:1 |
| 2nd     | 2.34:1 |
| 3rd     | 1.52:1 |
| 4th     | 1.14:1 |
| 5th     | 0.87:1 |
| 6th     | 0.69:1 |
| Reverse | 3.40:1 |

### Final Drive

Ratio: 3.46:1. Multi plate limited slip differential.

## Electrics

**Alternator:** Denso SC5 200 Amps

**Voltage Regulation:** 14.4V  $\pm$ 0.5V @ 20°C

**Battery:** Banner 88 AH

## Steering

Rack and pinion, servotronic speed sensitive power assisted steering. Column tilt and reach adjustments.

**Turns lock to lock:** 2.75

**Turning Circle:** 12.5 m (Kerb to Kerb)

**Total Toe<sub>1</sub>:**

### Front Toe Out

8' ( $\pm$ 4')

### Rear Toe Out

20' (+10' / -0')

<sup>1</sup>. With the vehicle at its design weight. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Suspension

**Front:** Aluminium independent double wishbone incorporating anti-dive geometry. Coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

**Rear:** Aluminium independent double wishbone incorporating longitudinal control arms. Coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

### Features

- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)
- Adaptive damping system (ADS)

## Brakes

### Footbrake

#### Dual Cast Ventilated Discs

|           | Front      | Rear        |
|-----------|------------|-------------|
| Diameter  | 390 mm     | 360 mm      |
| Callipers | Six piston | Four piston |

### Park Brake

Electrically operated independent park brake callipers on each rear brake disc.

### Brake System Features

- Anti Lock Braking System (ABS)
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)
- Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD)
- Traction Control (TCS)

## Wheels

### Aston Martin Aluminium Alloy

| Front      | Rear      |
|------------|-----------|
| 8.5j x 20" | 11j x 20" |

### Aston Martin Lightweight Forged Aluminium Alloy<sub>1</sub>

| Front      | Rear      |
|------------|-----------|
| 8.5j x 20" | 11j x 20" |

<sub>1</sub>. Option.

## Wheel Nut Torque

Tighten all wheel nuts in two stages.

1. Tighten every second nut (as shown in the diagram) to 80 Nm (60 lb/ft) until all five nuts are tightened.
2. Tighten every second nut (as shown in the diagram) to 180 Nm (133 lb/ft) until all five nuts are tightened.

Always tighten wheel nuts in one continuous movement.



## Tyres

### Tyre Loading

Tyres installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 690 kg (front) and 925 kg (rear), or a load index of 95 (front) and 105 (rear) and a speed category of ZR.

### Summer Tyres

 The original equipment tyres, including winter tyres, installed to this vehicle are an approved specification, designated by 'AMR' on the sidewall.

|                  | Front              | Rear                |
|------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Bridgestone S001 | 245/40 ZR 20 (95Y) | 295/35 ZR 20 (105Y) |

### Winter Tyres

|             | Front              | Rear                |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Bridgestone | 245/40 ZR 20 (95W) | 295/35 ZR 20 (105W) |

### Tyre Air Pressures

#### Cold Inflation<sup>1</sup>

| Front   | Rear    |
|---------|---------|
| 2.5 bar | 2.6 bar |

<sup>1</sup>. All Tyres.

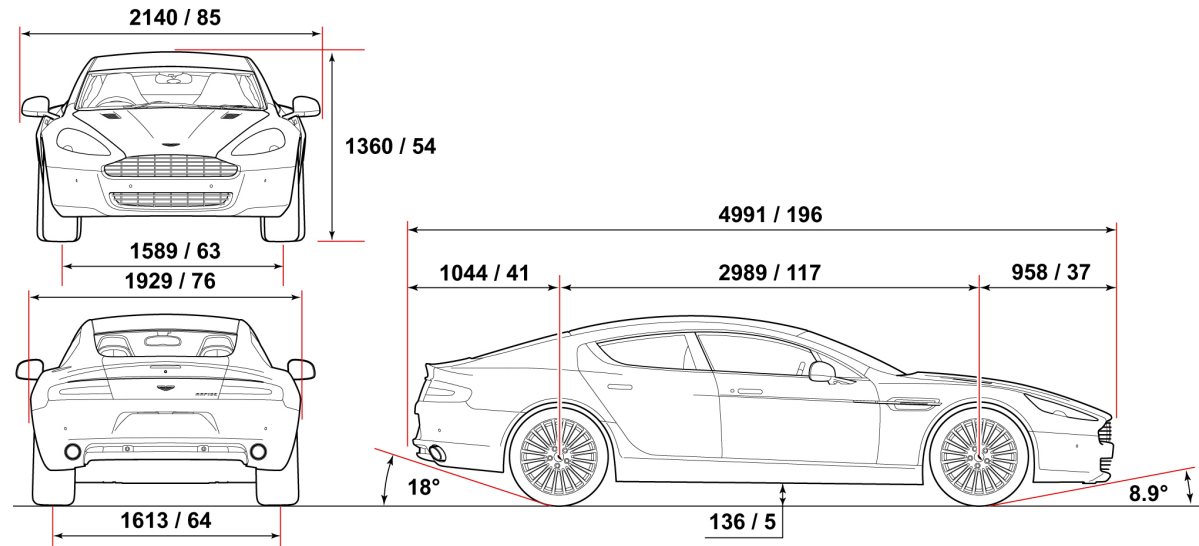
| Bulbs                                                                                                               |        |         | Vehicle Specification                                                                                                                                   | Vehicle Weights |                  |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                                     | Rating | Type    | Body                                                                                                                                                    | Kerb Weight     | GVW <sub>1</sub> | Boot Load          |
| Headlamp dipped and main beam                                                                                       | 35W    | D1S HID | Four door coupe with four seats                                                                                                                         | 1990 kg         | 2410 kg          | 50 kg <sub>2</sub> |
| Front Indicator lamps                                                                                               |        | LED     | Extruded aluminium bonded body structure with aluminium and composite body panels. Extruded aluminium door side impact beams.                           |                 |                  |                    |
| Parking lamp                                                                                                        |        | LED     |                                                                                                                                                         |                 |                  |                    |
| Door lamps                                                                                                          | 5W     | W5W     |                                                                                                                                                         | <b>Towing</b>   |                  |                    |
| Side Repeater                                                                                                       |        | LED     |                                                                                                                                                         |                 |                  |                    |
| Front and rear footwell lamps                                                                                       | 5W     | W5W     | This vehicle is not engineered to tow any form of caravan, boat or trailer.                                                                             |                 |                  |                    |
| Rear quarter lamps / Boot lamps / Reading lamps                                                                     |        | LED     | No towing devices are approved to install to this vehicle, other than a front towing eye to aid recovery or loading of this vehicle onto a transporter. |                 |                  |                    |
| High Mounted Stop Lamp                                                                                              | 5W     | LED     |                                                                                                                                                         |                 |                  |                    |
| Registration plate lamps                                                                                            |        | W5W     |                                                                                                                                                         |                 |                  |                    |
| The rear lamp cluster is a sealed unit. If any rear cluster lamp fails to operate contact your Aston Martin Dealer. |        |         |                                                                                                                                                         |                 |                  |                    |

## Interior Dimensions

|                               | Front    | Rear    |
|-------------------------------|----------|---------|
| Effective Headroom            | 932 mm   | 936 mm  |
| Shoulder Room                 | 1392 mm  | 1322 mm |
| Hip Room                      | 1410 mm  | 1100 mm |
| Effective Legroom             | 1086 mm  | 765 mm  |
| Boot Configuration            | Volume   |         |
| Divider up                    | 223 ltr  |         |
| Divider down                  | 393 ltr  |         |
| Divider down, rear seats down | 1029 ltr |         |

## Exterior Dimensions

 Ride height is measured at Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW). (mm / inch)



## Vehicle Features

### Interior

- Handcrafted leather and fabric trim
- Walnut facia veneer<sub>1</sub>
- Climate control
- Security system interacting with the central locking system and PATS immobiliser system
- Driver and front passenger dual stage front airbags
- Front and rear passengers side airbags
- Ten direction electrically adjusted driver's seat
- Position memory front seats (including door rear view mirrors)
- Heated seats (two heat levels)<sub>1</sub>.
- Cooled<sub>1</sub>. and heated seats
- Organic electroluminescent (OEL) displays

<sub>1</sub>. Option(s).

- Infotainment centre
  - Bang & Olufsen audio system with radio, 6 CD autochanger and 1000W power output
  - Hands-free phone system
  - Garmin satellite navigation system
- Rear seat entertainment system

### Exterior

- Door mirrors
  - Heated, electrically adjusted
  - Position memory system
  - Power fold system
  - Auto fold system
- Electrically operated door windows
- Heated rear window
- Parking assist sensors

## Fluids and Capacities

### Recommended Fluids

 ***To achieve the required high performance of synthetic lubricants, do not mix with mineral oils.***

**Engine Oil:** Mobil 1 0W-40 and 0W-30. However, if this oil is not available a fully synthetic 0W-40 or 0W-30 oil meeting the specifications detailed below can be used. No other viscosity grades or specifications are acceptable.

#### 0W-40

| Authority | Standard          |
|-----------|-------------------|
| API       | SL / SJ / EC / CF |
| ACEA      | A3 / B3 / B4      |
| ILSAC     | GF3               |

#### 0W-30

| Authority | Standard          |
|-----------|-------------------|
| API       | SL / SJ / EC / CF |
| ACEA      | A1 / A5 / B1 / B5 |
| ILSAC     | GF3               |

Only use oils 'Certified For Gasoline Engines' by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ISLAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.



**⚠ Do not mix OAT antifreeze with glycol based antifreeze.**

**Engine Coolant:** 50% water, 50% Havoline OAT

**Automatic Transmission Fluid:** Shell ATFM 1375-4

**Automatic Transmission Final Drive Oil:** Shell SAE 75W-90, including one bottle (0.118 ltr) of Kendall Additive per fill

**Brake Fluid:** React Performance DOT 4

**Power Steering Fluid:** Pentosin CHF 11S

**Air Conditioner Refrigerant:** HFC134A

## Capacities

**Engine Sump (including filter):** 11 ltr

**Automatic Final Drive and Cooler:** 1.6 ltr

**Automatic Gearbox and Cooler:** 9.7 ltr

**Engine Cooling System:** 15 ltr

**Power Steering Reservoir:** 1.3 ltr

**Screen Washer Reservoir:** 6.9 ltr

**Fuel Tank:** 90.5 ltr<sub>1</sub>

<sub>1</sub>. Approximately 88.5 ltr usable.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Service

|                                               |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| Pre-delivery Inspection .....                 | A.2  |
| Servicing .....                               | A.4  |
| Service Record .....                          | A.7  |
| Anti Corrosion Inspection .....               | A.9  |
| Replacement of Airbag Units .....             | A.11 |
| Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners ..... | A.11 |
| Field Service Actions .....                   | A.12 |
| Service Action Recalls.....                   | A.13 |

## Pre-delivery Inspection

This free series of checks is carried out on the vehicle by the Selling Dealer before delivery. The checks make sure that you receive a vehicle which matches the high quality standards set by Aston Martin Limited.

The list below applies to all Aston Martin vehicles. Your Aston Martin may or may not have all or some of the functionality listed.

Make sure that the entry is stamped and signed as completed. The following checks will be made:

### Levels and Leaks

- Engine oil
- Power steering oil
- Brake fluid
- Clutch fluid
- Engine coolant level
- Engine coolant specific gravity
- Windscreen washer fluid
- Fuel system
- Transaxle leak check
- Lift glass
- Battery

### Mechanical Functions

- Gear selection
- Clutch operation
- Throttle pedal operation
- Park brake operation
- Steering column adjustment and lock operation
- Seat adjuster rails
- Bonnet release and catch
- Door operation and locks
- Storage compartments
- Rear view mirror
- Boot release and catch
- Lift glass release and catch
- Seat belt operation

### Electrical Checks

- Battery condition
- Gear selection
- Heated rear window
- Windscreen and headlamp washers
- Windscreen wipers
- Climate control

- Infotainment centre operation
- All speakers
- Reversing, registration plate and brake lamps
- Side and headlamps
- Rear fog lamps
- Hazard warning lamps
- Instrument illumination and dimmer
- Gauges and warning symbols
- Centre stack controls
- Horns
- Reset clock
- Blower motor
- Seat belt warning system
- Security system and vehicle key
- Interior lamps
- Cigar lighter<sup>1</sup>
- All seat functions
- Door window mechanisms
- Door and boot lamps

---

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

- 
- Central locking system
  - Filler flap lock operation
  - Clutch pedal start inhibit
  - Door mirror adjustments
  - Interrogate fault codes
  - Record battery open-circuit voltage
  - Tyre pressure sensing
  - Centre console controls

### Wheels and Tyres

- Install locking road wheel nuts<sub>1</sub>
- Check road wheel nuts torque
- Tyre pressures
- Tyre orientation

### Road Test

- Engine
  - Clutch
  - Transaxle
  - Steering
- 

<sub>1</sub>. Option.

- 
- Brakes
  - Wheel balance
  - Adaptive dampers
  - Dampers
  - Exhaust by-pass system
  - Gear shift operation
  - Noise, vibration or harshness
  - Climate control performance
  - Instruments operation
  - Seat belt and buckle operation
  - Steering wheel alignment
  - Dynamic stability control, traction control, adaptive damping and anti-lock braking system operation
  - Transmission oil cooler

### Final Checks

- Drive belt tensioner operation
- Fuel and brake pipe security
- Fuel and fluid leaks
- Security of cooling hoses
- Exhaust catalyst security

### Hand-over Preparation

- Check function of locks and vehicle keys
  - Clean bodywork and road wheel arch liners.
  - Clean off all transit labels
  - Valet vehicle
  - De-grease windscreen
  - Install carpets
  - Remove interior protection
  - Check Owner's Guidebook
  - Check tools
  - Install Registration plates
  - Tyre sealant kit
  - Towing eye
  - Battery conditioner<sub>2</sub>
  - Field Service Actions and Recall status
- 

<sub>2</sub>. Option.

**Free Pre-delivery Inspection**

\*4.75 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

\* Scheduled operation time.

## Servicing

### Service Periods

Vehicle servicing is every 10,000 miles or 12 months, which ever occurs first.

- 10,000 miles or 12 months
- 20,000 miles or 24 months
- 30,000 miles or 36 months

### Service Tables

The following service schedules are recommended for this vehicle. The schedules may be modified if necessary. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details of any service schedule updates.

| 10,000 miles /<br>12 months             | 20,000 miles /<br>24 months | Item                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pre-Maintenance</b>                  |                             |                                                          |
| x                                       | x                           | Install vehicle protection kit and wing covers           |
| x                                       | x                           | Check bulletins, field service actions and recall status |
| <b>Fluids, Filters and Leaks Checks</b> |                             |                                                          |
| x                                       | x                           | Renew engine oil                                         |
| x                                       | x                           | Renew engine oil filter                                  |
| x                                       | x                           | Check for engine oil leaks                               |
| -                                       | x                           | Renew air cleaner elements                               |
| x                                       | x                           | Check transaxle for leaks. Top up if required            |

| 10,000 miles /<br>12 months      | 20,000 miles /<br>24 months | Item                                                                  | 10,000 miles<br>/ 12 months       | 20,000 miles/<br>24 months | Item                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Every 40,000 mile or four years  |                             | Renew differential oil and clean the filter                           | <b>Mechanical Function Checks</b> |                            |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| -                                | -                           | Check differential for leaks, top up if required                      | x                                 | x                          | Lubricate all door locks and hinges                                                                                                                                                        |
| x                                | x                           | Check gearbox for leaks. Top up if required                           | x                                 | x                          | Lubricate bonnet secondary catch                                                                                                                                                           |
| Every 100,000 mile or five years |                             | Renew engine coolant - check concentration                            | x                                 | x                          | Check security of the bonnet catch. Check that the bonnet secondary catch moves freely over its whole travel and returns smartly under spring pressure.                                    |
| x                                | x                           | Check engine coolant level. Top up if required                        |                                   |                            | Check and adjust the accessory drive belt tension. Renew if necessary                                                                                                                      |
| x                                | x                           | Check cooling and heating systems for leaks                           | x                                 | x                          | Check park brake security                                                                                                                                                                  |
| x                                | x                           | Check fuel hoses, pipes and unions for leaks, security and condition  | x                                 | x                          | Check condition of park brake pads                                                                                                                                                         |
| Every 12 Months                  |                             | Renew brake fluid                                                     | x                                 | x                          | Inspect brake pad wear and condition of discs and callipers. Replace brake pads and wear warning leads if 60% worn. Check front brake disc shields for fatigue and for clearance to discs. |
| x                                | x                           | Check power steering reservoir. Top up if required                    |                                   |                            | Check wiper blade inserts. Renew if necessary                                                                                                                                              |
| x                                | x                           | Check power steering system for leaks, security and condition         |                                   |                            | Renew wiper blades                                                                                                                                                                         |
| x                                | x                           | Check brake hoses, pipes and unions for leaks, security and condition | x                                 | -                          | Inspect coolant radiator, air conditioning condenser and transmission cooler. Clean if required                                                                                            |
| x                                | x                           | Check suspension dampers for leaks                                    | -                                 | x                          | Check final drive cooler for debris. Clean if required                                                                                                                                     |
| x                                | x                           | Top-up windscreen and headlamp washer reservoir                       | x                                 | x                          | Check condition and operation of all seat belts                                                                                                                                            |
| x                                | x                           | Check exhaust system for leaks                                        |                                   |                            | Check security of exhaust system mountings and heat shields                                                                                                                                |
| x                                | x                           | Check operation of exhaust by-pass valves                             | x                                 | x                          |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| x                                | x                           | Check Air Conditioning system for leaks                               | x                                 | x                          |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| -                                | x                           | Renew pollen filter                                                   | x                                 | x                          |                                                                                                                                                                                            |

| 10,000 mile s/<br>12 months       | 20,000 miles /<br>24 months | Item                                                                       | 10,000 miles/<br>12 months    | 20,000 miles /<br>24 months | Item                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| x                                 | x                           | Check cooling system hoses security and condition                          | x                             | x                           | Check windscreen and headlamp washers and jets                                 |
| x                                 | x                           | Check Air Conditioning hoses security and condition                        | x                             | x                           | Check rear view mirrors for security and function                              |
| x                                 | x                           | Check security and condition of suspension ball joints, gaiters and bushes | x                             | x                           | Check and operate powerfold mirrors                                            |
| -                                 | x                           | Check tightness of drive shaft bolts                                       | x                             | x                           | Check and operate electric windows                                             |
| x                                 | x                           | Check rear view mirrors for security and function                          | x                             | x                           | Check service interval display. Reset                                          |
| -                                 | x                           | Check condition of underbody protection and wheel arch liners              | -                             | x                           | Replace vehicle key battery                                                    |
| Every 40,000 mile or four years   |                             | Clean throttle butterflies                                                 | <b>Wheels and Tyre Checks</b> |                             |                                                                                |
| <b>Electrical Function Checks</b> |                             |                                                                            | x                             | x                           | Check for correct tyre size, type and orientation                              |
| 70,000 mile                       |                             | Renew spark plugs                                                          | x                             | x                           | Check and report tyre tread depth                                              |
| x                                 | x                           | Check and record battery voltage                                           | x                             | x                           | Check tyres for uneven, excessive wear or damage                               |
| x                                 | x                           | Clean and service the battery connections if required                      | x                             | x                           | Check and adjust tyre pressures                                                |
| -                                 | x                           | Check headlamp alignment. Adjust if required                               | x                             | x                           | Check torque of road wheel nuts                                                |
| x                                 | x                           | Check operation of all lamps                                               | x                             | x                           | Check road wheel rims for inner and outer damage.                              |
| x                                 | x                           | Check operation of all warning symbols                                     | x                             | x                           | Check tyre pressure monitoring colour coded valve collars for correct location |
| x                                 | x                           | Check audible warnings including security system                           | x                             | x                           | Check operation of tyre pressure sensors                                       |
| x                                 | x                           | Check operation of the horns                                               | x                             | x                           | Check 'use by' date of tyre repair kit.                                        |
| x                                 | x                           | Check operation of the windscreen wipers                                   |                               |                             |                                                                                |

## Service Record

The following service records cover the regular services at 10,000 mile or 12 month, which ever occurs first, intervals. Make sure that at each service the appropriate entry is stamped and signed as completed.

**Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):**

**Date of Delivery:**

\* Scheduled operation time.

| 10,000 miles<br>/ 12 months | 20,000 miles<br>/ 24 months | Item                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Anti Corrosion Check</b> |                             |                                                                                                       |
| x                           | x                           | Check body panels and underbody for corrosion starting from the inside - out (excluding stone chips). |
| <b>Gear Change Modes</b>    |                             |                                                                                                       |
| x                           | x                           | Auto Drive                                                                                            |
| x                           | x                           | Touchtronic                                                                                           |
| x                           | x                           | Reverse                                                                                               |
| x                           | x                           | Sport                                                                                                 |
| <b>Final Checks</b>         |                             |                                                                                                       |
| x                           | x                           | Degrease windscreen                                                                                   |
| x                           | x                           | Carry out road test - including operation of all gearbox modes                                        |
| x                           | x                           | Check ABS and traction control operation                                                              |
| x                           | x                           | Check operation of all seat belts and buckles                                                         |
| x                           | x                           | Check that fuel filler bowl rain drain is clear                                                       |

**10,000 mile or 12 month**

\*3.85 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**30,000 mile or 3rd year**

\*3.85 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**50,000 mile or 5th year**

\*3.85 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**20,000 mile or 24 month**

\*5.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**40,000 mile or 4th year**

\*5.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**60,000 mile or 6th year**

\*5.15 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp



Anti Corrosion Inspection

70,000 mile or 7th year

\*6.30 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

90,000 mile or 9th year

\*4.05 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection 1st Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

80,000 mile or 8th year

\*5.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

100,000 km or 10th year

\*5.45 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date: Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection 2nd Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection 3rd Year**

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection 5th Year**

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection 7th Year**

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection 4th Year**

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection 6th Year**

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection 8th Year**

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

## Replacement of Airbag Units

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all airbag units must be replaced. To make sure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

### Airbag Replacement 10th Year

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Odometer: \_\_\_\_\_

(Dealer Stamp)

## Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all seat belt pre-tensioners must be replaced. To make sure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

### Seat Belt Pre-Tensioners Replacement 10th Year

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Odometer: \_\_\_\_\_

(Dealer Stamp)

### Anti Corrosion Inspection 9th Year

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Odometer: \_\_\_\_\_

(Dealer Stamp)

### Anti Corrosion Inspection 10th Year

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Odometer: \_\_\_\_\_

(Dealer Stamp)

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.[illegible][illegible]

## Service Action Recalls

[illegible]



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Aston Martin Assistance

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Aston Martin Roadside Assistance..... | B.2 |
| How Does the Plan Work.....           | B.2 |
| Further Information .....             | B.3 |

## Aston Martin Roadside Assistance

In the event of a breakdown caused by a defect covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme will provide the Aston Martin owner with emergency roadside assistance at no cost. The scheme also provides the following benefits:

- Exclusive 24-Hour Toll-Free Assistance Line.
- 24-Hour Emergency Towing.
- 24-Hour Roadside Assistance.
- 24-Hour Emergency Lockout Service (up to US \$100 per call out)
- Sign and Drive Service.
- 24-Hour Emergency Trip Interruption Benefits.
- 24-Hour Aston Martin Dealer Locator Service.
- Repaired Vehicle Reunite Service.
- Assistance Experience Survey Card.

The Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme benefits provide for towing to the nearest approved dealer. Should the vehicle breakdown occur 150 or more miles (241 or more km) from the nearest approved dealer and 150 or more miles (241 or more km) from the primary residence of the owner or operator, the owner or operator is entitled to trip interruption benefits. Trip interruption benefits include lodging and meals for up to 2 nights, and alternative transportation. Trip interruption benefits are limited to a maximum of US \$500 per interruption.

The term of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme runs concurrent with the Aston Martin New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The plan does not cover the following:

- Rental fleet vehicles.
- Breakdowns caused by accident, vandalism, racing or abuse.
- Additional towing costs for towing to other than the nearest approved dealer to the breakdown site.

Expenses for such items as entertainment, recreation, and non-essential goods and services are excluded from trip interruption benefits.

## How Does the Plan Work

The national toll-free assistance telephone number is shown on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card and on the label on the drivers side door pillar.

If your Aston Martin vehicle suffers a breakdown whilst driving, call the toll-free number: 1- 888 - 59ASTON. It is available 24 hours a day.



*It may be helpful to have the relevant telephone numbers entered into your telephone 'phone book'.*

Have your Aston Martin Roadside Assistance Membership Card ready.

Provide the Roadside Assistance Service Representative with:

- Your name.
- The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), which is printed on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card. The VIN is also printed on a decal on the drivers side dashboard. This decal may be viewed from outside the car by looking in through the front windshield.
- The vehicle location.
- Where you are calling from, including a telephone number on which you may be contacted.



## Further Information

The Roadside Assistance Service Representative will work with you to find the best solution to your concern. Please stay with the vehicle until assistance arrives.

See the separate brochure provided for full details of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme. The terms of the scheme may be changed without notice.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Aston Martin Warranty

|                                                 |     |                                                               |      |                                                |      |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 Aston Martin Warranties.....                  | C.2 | 9 California Emissions Warranties .....                       | C.10 | 17 Aston Martin Extended Service Contract..... | C.17 |
| 2 New Vehicle Limited Warranty .....            | C.4 | 10 How do I get Service under the Emissions Warranties.....   | C.13 | Owner Details.....                             | C.18 |
| 3 New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement .....  | C.5 | 11 How do I handle Emergency Repairs to make sure they do not |      | Vehicle Details .....                          | C.18 |
| 4 What is not Covered under the Warranties..... | C.5 | affect the Emissions Warranties.....                          | C.13 | Owner Warranty Transfer (3).....               | C.19 |
| 5 Customer Satisfaction Campaigns .....         | C.8 | 12 What Replacement Parts Should I Use.....                   | C.14 | Owner Warranty Transfer (2).....               | C.19 |
| 6 Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty .....     | C.8 | 13 Preserve Your Emissions Warranty .....                     | C.15 | Owner Warranty Transfer (1).....               | C.19 |
| 7 Emissions Defect Warranty.....                | C.8 | 14 Customer Satisfaction.....                                 | C.15 | Owner Warranty Transfer (6).....               | C.21 |
| 8 Emissions Performance Warranty.....           | C.9 | 15 The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program .....   | C.16 | Owner Warranty Transfer (5).....               | C.21 |
|                                                 |     | 16 State Warranty Enforcement Laws .....                      | C.17 | Owner Warranty Transfer (4).....               | C.21 |

# 1 Aston Martin Warranties

This chapter contains information essential for the understanding of the Aston Martin warranties and for the implementation of any necessary Warranty rectification. It is recommended that you read this chapter carefully to familiarize yourself with the benefits available under the various warranties.

## 1.1 Warranty Communications

Any communications regarding Warranty should initially be addressed to your Aston Martin Dealer. If necessary, you may communicate with Aston Martin at the appropriate address listed.

National After Sales Manager  
Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.  
9920 Irvine Centre Drive  
Irvine  
CA 92618

Warranty Department  
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited,  
Banbury Road,  
Gaydon,  
Warwick,  
CV35 0DB  
England

## 1.2 Warranties

All Aston Martin warranties are issued by Aston Martin Lagonda Limited on behalf of Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc., the sole authorized United States agent of Aston Martin vehicles.

The warranties provided herein are for the benefit of the original purchaser and any subsequent owner during the relevant Warranty Period (defined below) in the Serviced Countries (defined below).

An Aston Martin vehicle is built and homologated to support the Region for which it is manufactured and is compliant with the local regulatory requirements of that Region. As a result, the warranties cover Aston Martin vehicles that are built for and supplied to the Region.

For the purposes of this Owner's Guide, 'Region means one of the following territories:

- the Americas, including the United States, Canada, and South America; or
- the United Kingdom, Europe, Russia and South Africa; or
- the Middle East, North Africa and India; or
- Asia Pacific, including China, Japan, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore, Australia and New Zealand.

'Serviced Countries' means either: (a) any country in the Region from which your Aston Martin vehicle was purchased, where there is an Aston Martin authorised dealer or repairer; or (b) any country agreed in writing with Aston Martin.

The warranties provided herein are for the benefit of the original purchaser and any subsequent owner during the relevant Warranty Period (defined below). The warranties cover Aston Martin vehicles that are built for and supplied to the Region.

The Warranty period for all Warranties (defined below) for vehicles begin on the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator service, whichever comes first.

---

**A summary of all Aston Martin warranties applicable to this vehicle (together the Warranties) are as follows:**

**a) New Vehicle Limited Warranty**

*Bumper to bumper:* Three years, unlimited mileage.

**b) Vehicle Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty**

*Period of cover:* Ten years, unlimited mileage.

**c) Vehicle Emission Warranties (Federal)**

*Emissions Defects Warranty:* Three years or 36,000 miles of vehicle use

*Certain emission parts:*<sup>1</sup> Eight years or 80,000 miles of vehicle use

*Emissions Performance Warranty:* Two years or 24,000 miles of vehicle use

**d) Vehicle Emission Warranties (Californian Vehicles)**

*Emissions Defect Warranty (Short Term):* Three years or 50,000 miles of vehicle use

---

<sup>1</sup>. Catalytic convertor, the electronic emissions control unit and / or the on-board emissions diagnostic device (required eight years or 80,000 mile (129,000 km) coverage per Clean Air Act).

*Emissions Defect Warranty (Long Term):*<sup>2</sup> Seven years or 70,000 miles of vehicle use

*Emissions Performance Warranty:* Three years or 50,000 miles of vehicle use

**1.3 Changes to Vehicles**

Aston Martin and its authorized dealers (the ‘**Dealers**’) reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

---

<sup>2</sup>. These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time your vehicle was certified by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) for sale in California.

**1.4 Reservation of Rights**

Aston Martin and its Dealers reserve the right to provide post-Warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the Warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at Aston Martin’s sole discretion. The fact that Aston Martin provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population, does not in any way obligate Aston Martin to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

### 1.5 Condition

As a fundamental condition of the Warranties, you are responsible for correctly using, maintaining and caring for your vehicle in accordance with the Aston Martin Owner's Guide (the **'Owner's Guide'**). Aston Martin recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Aston Martin.

## 2 New Vehicle Limited Warranty

### 2.1 Warranty Limitations

This New Vehicle Limited Warranty is the only express Warranty applicable to your vehicle. Aston Martin neither assumes, nor authorizes anyone to assume for it, any other obligation or liability in connection with this Warranty. No person, including Aston Martin employees or Dealers, can modify or waive any part of this Warranty.

#### a) Limitation of Remedies

Under this Warranty, it is agreed that the sole exclusive remedy against Aston Martin and its authorized Dealers shall be for the repair or replacement of defective parts as provided herein. The sole purpose of this exclusive remedy shall be to provide for the free repair and replacement of defective parts in the manner prescribed in this Warranty.

This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Aston Martin, through its authorized Dealers, is willing and able to repair or replace defective parts in the prescribed manner.

Aston Martin and its Dealers are not responsible to you for any time or income that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages can not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer. You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Aston Martin shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and /or services.

### **b) Implied Warranties and Consequential Damages**

Under the law of some States, you as the owner may be entitled to the benefit of the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for intended purpose. These implied warranties are limited to the extent allowed by law to the time period covered by the written warranties, or the applicable time period provided by State Law, whichever period is shorter.

Some States do not permit a limitation on how long an implied warranty will last, or on the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to you. This warranty gives owners specific legal rights, and they may also have other rights that vary from State to State.

## **3 New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement**

### **3.1 Introduction**

Aston Martin warrants that during the Warranty period, if an Aston Martin vehicle is correctly operated and maintained by the user in accordance with the Maintenance chapter of the Owner's Guide, repairs required to correct defects in materials or workmanship will be performed without charge; any component covered by this Warranty found to be defective in materials or workmanship, will be repaired, or replaced, without charge. Your Aston Martin Dealer will repair the vehicle with genuine approved Aston Martin parts.

### **3.2 Warranty Coverage**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers any original or OEM component of the Aston Martin vehicle that is defective during the basic Warranty period, with the exception of tires, the items listed under section 4.4, normal maintenance items and regularly scheduled maintenance parts and labor. The Warranty includes any part scheduled for routine replacement during the Warranty period only if it is defective. If a part fails at the same time it is due for replacement it is not covered by the Warranty.

## **4 What is not Covered under the Warranties**

### **4.1 Excluded Categories of Vehicle**

The following categories of vehicle are excluded from the provisions of the Warranties:

- Vehicles sold for hire.
- Vehicles used for motor sport, competition and track events (except Aston Martin organized and managed events).
- Vehicles that are incorrectly maintained.

### **4.2 Damage Caused by Accident, Alteration or Misuse**

The Warranties do not cover:

- Damage caused by collision, fire, flood, theft, freezing, vandalism, riot, explosion, or objects striking the vehicle.
- Misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing, or using the vehicle as a stationary power source.
- Alterations or modifications of the vehicle (including changes to the body, chassis, or components) carried out on the vehicle, at any time during its lifetime, by non-approved repairers or body repair centres and shops, tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emission systems or with other parts that affect these systems.

- Disconnection or alteration of the odometer, or where the actual mileage cannot be determined due to the odometer being inoperative for an extended period of time.
- Use of contaminated or incorrect fuel or fluids or application of unauthorized chemicals by the customer.

### 4.3 Damage Caused by Use or the Environment

Surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery and other appearance items that result from use and / or exposure to the elements are not covered under any of the Warranties.

The Warranties do not cover:

- Stone chips, scratches
- Lightning, hail damage
- Dints or dents
- Windstorm damage
- Road salt, tree sap
- Earthquake damage
- Bird and insect droppings
- Freezing, water or flood damage
- Cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- Windshield stress cracks

- Rodent damage
- Incorrect polishing of paint surface.

### 4.4 Damage Caused by Failure to Maintain or Incorrect Maintenance

Damage caused by failure to maintain the vehicle, incorrect maintenance of the vehicle, or using the wrong fuel, oil, lubricants, or fluids is not covered under the Warranties. Refer to the Specifications chapter of the Owner's Guide for correct fluid levels, and for information on the correct ways to maintain your vehicle.

Examples of important maintenance procedures that need to be done correctly are:

- Oil changes
- Cleaning and polishing
- Oils, lubricants and other fluids
- Engine tune-up
- Oil & air filters
- Wiper blades
- Brake pads and lining
- Tire rotation, inflation
- Clutch linings
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing.

### 4.5 Other Items and Conditions Not Covered by the Warranties

The Warranties do not cover:

- The installation or use of a non-Aston Martin part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Aston Martin or non-Aston Martin) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Aston Martin, if the installed part fails or causes an Aston Martin part to fail.
- Damage to, or caused by, non-approved accessories such as alarms, telephones.
- Damage to, or caused by, non-approved snow chains or towing devices.
- Damage caused by failure to maintain adequate levels of fuel in your vehicle.
- Vehicles that have been labeled or branded as being 'dismantled', 'fire', 'flood', 'junk', 'rebuilt', 'reconstructed', 'salvaged' – this will void the Warranties.
- Vehicles that have been determined as a 'total loss' by an insurance company, or other official body – this will void the Warranties.



- Service adjustments, wear items and alignments after one (1) year or 10,000 miles, whichever occurs first.
- Use of alternative fuels: Aston Martin does not recommend or approve of the use of Liquid Petroleum gas or Compressed Natural gas. Damage caused by the use of alternative fuels or fuel additives is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including a) tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks; and b) tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (including when stuck in snow or mud), incorrect mounting or dismounting, or tire repair.
- Vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined.

#### 4.6 Wear and Tear Items

Items that are subject to wear and tear are generally divided into two categories, namely those specified for replacement or adjustment during scheduled maintenance and those that require replacement or adjustment dependent upon conditions of use.

##### a) Scheduled Maintenance Items

The items listed below are covered by the Vehicle Warranty up to the first scheduled change point that replacement or adjustment is required during scheduled maintenance operations.

- Drive Belts
- Spark Plugs
- Oil, air, pollen and fuel filters.

 *The period of warranty cover for any item may not exceed the time and distance limitation of the vehicle warranty.*

##### b) Other Items

The items listed below are recognized as having a limited service life or are subject to wear or damage. However, these items are covered by the vehicle warranty for up to one year or the first service, whichever ever occurs first.

- Wiper Blades
- All Light bulbs

 *Xenon headlamp light bulbs and instrumentation light bulbs are covered by the full vehicle warranty.*

- Wheel alignment and balancing
- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlamp and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel systems checks and parking brake cable adjustments.
- Remote transmitter batteries.

 *Brake pads, brake rotors and other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but they are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the Vehicle Warranty.*

##### c) Consumables

Replacement or 'top-up' of consumable fluids, e.g. oils, anti-freeze, brake fluid, windshield wash solution and refrigerant, is only covered when they are used as part of a warranty repair.

## 5 Customer Satisfaction Campaigns

In order to maintain a high level of customer confidence and satisfaction with Aston Martin products, Aston Martin may periodically determine that certain service procedures are necessary, and will assume costs for same, in whole or in part, independent of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. When repairs to your vehicle are covered by the terms of one of these policy adjustments, your Aston Martin Dealer will advise you of the extent to which Aston Martin will pay either for parts, or for labor, or both.

If you have a question regarding a possible extra-Warranty adjustment, an authorized Aston Martin Dealer or Aston Martin can provide the details when the year, model and vehicle identification number (VIN) are supplied.

Aston Martin reserves the right to make modifications in vehicles manufactured or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar modifications in vehicles previously manufactured or sold by them.

## 6 Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty

The vehicle bodywork is protected by an Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty. Should any part of the bodywork of the Aston Martin vehicle be perforated the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced. The term ‘perforation’ means a hole that penetrates from the inner surface of a body panel or box section outwards. A pre-condition of supporting this Warranty is an annual Dealer inspection (Refer to ‘Service’, page A.1).

## 7 Emissions Defect Warranty

### 7.1 Federal Requirements

Aston Martin provides coverage under the Emissions Defect Warranty (including labor and diagnosis) for repairs of emissions related parts which become defective on vehicles with the following years of service or mileage (whichever occurs first):

| Parts                                | Years in Service | Mileage |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| Emissions Related Parts              | 3                | 36,000  |
| Certain Emissions Parts <sub>1</sub> | 8                | 80,000  |

<sub>1</sub>. Means the catalytic converter, the electronic emissions control unit (PCM) and / or the on-board emissions diagnostic device.

During the Warranty coverage period, Aston Martin warrants that:

- Your vehicle or engine is designed, built and equipped to meet (at the time it is sold) the applicable emissions regulations of the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- Your vehicle or engine is free from defects in factory-supplied Materials or workmanship that could prevent it from conforming with applicable EPA regulations
- You will not be charged for repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective Emissions Related Parts (defined under section 8.2 (What is Covered))

## 8 Emissions Performance Warranty

### 8.1 Federal Requirements

If your vehicle is registered in a State where the State or Local Government has an EPA - approved inspection and maintenance program, any repairs which are required on your vehicle may also be covered under the Emissions Performance Warranty if your vehicle has the following years service or mileage (whichever occurs first) and if you meet certain conditions noted below:

| Parts                                | Years in Service | Mileage |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| Emissions Related Parts              | 2                | 24,000  |
| Certain Emissions Parts <sup>1</sup> | 8                | 80,000  |

<sup>1</sup>. Means the catalytic converter, the electronic emissions control unit (PCM) and / or the on-board emissions diagnostic device.

Under the Emissions Performance Warranty, Aston Martin will repair, replace, or adjust (with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts) any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on correct care and scheduled maintenance contained in the Owner's Guide.

- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program.
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, State or Federal Law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards (a penalty or sanction includes being denied the right to use your vehicle).
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused. The Emissions Performance Warranty will not apply to your vehicle if the diagnosis on your vehicle shows your vehicle will pass the applicable State or Local Government test using test procedures and standards set by the EPA.

### 8.2 What is Covered

If the following parts contain an emissions- related defect (an **'Emissions Related Part'**) they will be covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty (set out in section 7) and the Emissions Performance Warranty:

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter

- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Engine Coolant Thermostat Assembly
- Engine Control Module
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank & Fuel Delivery Module
- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)
- System PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components

- Spark Plugs and Ignition Coils and Wires
- Throttle Body Assembly
- Transmission Control Module
- Volume Air Flow Sensor.

 *Some items and equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.*

Also covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components in the list of parts set out above.

### 8.3 Parts Replaced on Regular Maintenance Schedules

Parts that should be replaced on a certain recommended maintenance schedule, remain under warranty until, (a) the first replacement time that is specified under Service in your Owner's Guide or, (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first). Aston Martin maintains a complete list of parts covered by Emissions Warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact Aston Martin or Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.

### 8.4 What is Not Covered

Aston Martin may deny you coverage under the Emissions Warranties if your vehicle or a part does not contain an emissions-related defect or has failed due to abuse, neglect, incorrect maintenance, unapproved modifications, or it concerns any items included in section 4 (What is not covered under the Warranties).

## 9 California Emissions Warranties

### 9.1 Your Warranty Rights and Obligations

This Warranty is applicable if your vehicle is both:

- a) Registered in California, or other States adopting California emission and warranty regulations<sup>1</sup>.
- b) Certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

Aston Martin and the California Air Resources Board are pleased to explain the emission control system Warranty on your Aston Martin vehicle.

In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards.

Aston Martin must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed under the Manufactures' Warranty Coverage, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or incorrect maintenance of your vehicle.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Other States adopting California emissions and warranty regulations: Passenger car & light-duty trucks (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) – California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, Washington and any other States that adopt the California emissions and warranty regulations from time to time.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Aston Martin will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

## 9.2 Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage

For vehicles eligible for coverage under the California Emissions Warranty, if your vehicle is:

**a) Three years in service or has mileage of 50,000 mile (whichever first occurs):**

- If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Aston Martin to make sure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your **Emission Control System Performance Warranty**
- If an emission related part (as defined in section 9.4) on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your **Short-Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty**

**b) Seven years in service or has mileage of 70,000 mile (whichever first occurs):**

- If an emission related part (as defined in section 9.5) on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your **Long-Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty**.

## 9.3 Owner's Warranty Responsibilities

As the vehicle owner or lessee, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner's Guide. Aston Martin recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Aston Martin cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to check the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to an Aston Martin Dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days. Aston Martin may deny warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and / or responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this Warranty, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. After Sales Department:

Tel: (949) 379 3104

or the California Air Resources Board at:

State of California Air Resources Board  
9528 Telstar Avenue  
El Monte  
California 91731

#### 9.4 What is Covered under the Short Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty

The parts in the following list are covered by Emission Control System Defects Warranties, which apply to every California model vehicle manufactured from, and including, 2004.

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Engine Coolant Thermostat Assembly
- Engine Control Module
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor

- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank & Fuel Delivery Module
- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Coils and Wires
- Throttle Body Assembly
- Transmission Control Module
- Volume Air Flow Sensor

 Some items and equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.

#### 9.5 What is Covered under the Long Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty

| Part Description              | V8 Vantage | DB9 / DBS / Rapide |
|-------------------------------|------------|--------------------|
| Camshaft Position Sensor      | x          |                    |
| Carbon Canister               | x          | x                  |
| Catalytic Converters          | x          | x                  |
| Engine Control Module         | x          | x                  |
| Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensors    | x          |                    |
| Exhaust Manifolds             | x          | x                  |
| Fuel Delivery Module          | x          | x                  |
| Fuel Level Sender             |            | x                  |
| Fuel Rail Assembly            | x          | x                  |
| Fuel Tank                     | x          | x                  |
| Inlet Manifold                | x          |                    |
| Rear Exhaust Muffler          | x          |                    |
| Secondary Air Injection Hoses | x          |                    |
| Secondary Air injection Pump  | x          |                    |
| Throttle Assembly             | x          | x                  |

## 10 How do I get Service under the Emissions Warranties

---

To get service under your Emissions Warranties, take your vehicle to any Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible after it has failed an EPA - approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. You must show the Dealer the document that states your vehicle has failed the test.

The Dealer will decide whether the repair is covered by the Warranty. If the Dealer cannot make a decision with regard to coverage under your Emissions Warranty, the Dealer shall forward the query to Aston Martin.

Aston Martin shall procure to make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair (The decision will be made within a shorter time if the law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.).

However, if you request a delay, agree to a delay, or if a delay is caused by an event for which neither Aston Martin nor your Aston Martin Dealer is responsible, the deadline for determination does not have to be met by Aston Martin.

---

If a question about Emissions Warranty coverage is referred to Aston Martin, you will be notified by Aston Martin in writing if your claim for Emissions Warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim.

## 11 How do I handle Emergency Repairs to make sure they do not affect the Emissions Warranties

---

Aston Martin strives to make sure that services are available to conduct emergency repairs on your vehicle when necessary. However, occasionally, Aston Martin may not be able to perform emergency repairs for reasons outside of its control.

If your vehicle requires an emergency repair on Emission Related Parts and an Aston Martin Dealer is 'unavailable or unable to perform the necessary repairs' (defined below), you may, but only as a last resort, procure repairs by someone other than an authorized Aston Martin Dealer (a '**Third Party**').

If the Dealer or, failing a decision by the Dealer, Aston Martin, determines that such repair is covered under Warranty, Aston Martin will reimburse you for the cost of such repairs, including diagnosis.

Make sure that you obtain and take the following to your Aston Martin Dealer within 30 days of the repairs having been performed:

- a) The parts that are replaced, and
- b) A receipt for the work

The term 'unavailable or unable to perform the necessary repairs' means:

- If you have informed Aston Martin of the required emergency repairs and either Aston Martin or the Aston Martin Emergency Service roadside assistance service provider is unable to take your vehicle to an accessible authorized Aston Martin Dealer
- If an authorized Dealer is unable to perform the necessary repairs
- If an authorized Dealer does not have the warranted part required to perform the necessary repairs

Aston Martin shall only reimburse you if the repairs are conducted by a Third Party within 30 days from the time you first bring your vehicle to the Dealer for repairs and the time it is repaired by the Third Party. Any repair that is not completed within the 30 day period may (at Aston Martin's discretion) constitute an emergency and any equivalent replacement part may be used in an emergency situation.

If Aston Martin determines that the repair is covered under Warranty, Aston Martin will reimburse you for the repair expenses if:

- a) It does not exceed the Aston Martin's suggested retail price for all warranted parts that are replaced and
- b) The labor charges do not exceed the Aston Martin's recommended time allowance for the Warranty repair and the labor charges are reasonable and similar to those charged by a repairer of similar geographical location

## 12 What Replacement Parts Should I Use

Aston Martin recommends that you use genuine Aston Martin replacement parts. However, when you are having non-Warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Aston Martin parts of equivalent specification.

If you decide to use non-Aston Martin parts, make sure that they are equivalent to Aston Martin parts in performance, quality and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Aston Martin parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your Emissions Warranty coverage.

 *The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems, the cost of which is not covered by the Warranties, can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using non-Aston Martin parts.*

For vehicles within the Warranty period, Aston Martin will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by correctly installed Aston Martin parts or non-Aston Martin parts that have been 'certified' by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Aston Martin is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Aston Martin parts that have not been 'certified' by the EPA.



## 13 Preserve Your Emissions Warranty

If you do not maintain your vehicle correctly, Aston Martin may have the right to deny you coverage under any of its Emissions Warranties. To have repairs made under the Emissions Warranties, you may be required to show that you have followed Aston Martin's instructions on correctly maintaining and using your vehicle, in accordance with the instructions set out in the Owner's Guide. Make sure that you save your service receipts and keep accurate records of any maintenance work performed.

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a Warranty matter, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. If you need more information about getting service under the Federal Emissions Performance Warranty, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this Warranty, you may contact:

Director Vehicle Program and Compliance Division (6505J)  
Environmental Protection Agency,  
401 M Street, S.W  
Washington,  
DC 20460

## 14 Customer Satisfaction

If you are not satisfied with any Warranty repairs performed by an authorized Aston Martin Dealer and feel that you have a legitimate Warranty concern that is not being addressed to your satisfaction, follow the steps recommended below for the best resolution.

### **Step 1: Raise your concerns with the authorized Dealer Service Manager.**

If you feel it would help clarify any concern, you should accompany the Service Manager on test drive of vehicle to demonstrate your issues and concerns. Often simply voicing your concerns directly to a manager or with the trained technician results in a satisfactory repair.

### **Step 2: If you are still not satisfied, contact dealership owner or General Manager.**

Often raising an unresolved issue to a General Manager will benefit all involved and bring a focussed effort from all parties involved.

### **Step 3: If you are still not satisfied, bring concerns to Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. Regional After Sales Manager or Operations Manager.**

All authorized Aston Martin Dealers have the contact details of the relevant After Sales and Operations Managers. Ask for the Aston Martin contact information and it will be gladly supplied.

### **Step 4: If you are still not satisfied, either:**

#### **a) Seek arbitration**

All disputes relating to the Warranty or the Extended Service Contract shall be resolved by binding arbitration under the Rules of Commercial Arbitration of the American Arbitration Association including its Supplementary Procedures for Consumer Related Disputes, before a single arbitrator who shall be bound by the terms of this Document. To maintain the highest quality of service and for staff training purposes, telephone calls to Aston Martin may be monitored and / or recorded.

#### **b) If your dispute is in the State of California, contact the Better Business Bureau (BBB)**

 *The BBB program is only in effect in the State of California, but steps one through three should be followed for quickest result.*

As a final step to make sure that your concerns are being fairly considered, Aston Martin has agreed to participate in a dispute settlement program administered by the BBB, at no cost to the customer.

Refer to section 15 for further details of the BBB.

## 15 The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program

(California only)

The Better Business Bureau (BBB) works with manufacturers and their customers in an attempt to reach a mutually acceptable resolution of any Warranty related concerns. If a Warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined in Customer Satisfaction (Refer to '14 Customer Satisfaction', page C.15), you may be eligible to participate in the BBB Auto Line Program.

The BBB Auto Line Program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Aston Martin to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process and the BBB will schedule an arbitration hearing so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB Auto Line decision, Aston Martin shall abide by the accepted decision as well.

Disputes submitted to the BBB Auto Line Program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with BBB. If you wish to use the program and you qualify for participation, you will be required to provide the following information:

- Your name and address.
- The vehicle identification number (VIN).
- The make, model and year of your vehicle.
- A description of the problem with your vehicle.

BBB AUTO LINE will also ask you for other information that may help resolve your concerns, such as the purchase price of your vehicle, the vehicle's current mileage, and copies of repair orders.

Upon receipt of such information, BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You are required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable State 'Lemon Law', you are also required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the 'Lemon Law'. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable State 'Lemon Law', you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE.

For more information about BBB AUTO LINE, including current eligibility standards, call 1-800-955-5100, visit the BBB website at [www.lemonlaw.bbb.org](http://www.lemonlaw.bbb.org), or write to the BBB at:

BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard  
Suite 800 Arlington  
VA 22203

## 16 State Warranty Enforcement Laws

These State laws (sometimes called **‘lemon laws’**) allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from State to State.

To the extent your State Law allows, Aston Martin requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. This will give us the opportunity to make any necessary repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your State’s law.

In other States, where not specifically required by State Law, Aston Martin requests that you send us written notification to:

National After Sales Manager  
Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.  
9920 Irvine Center Drive,  
Irvine CA 92618

## 17 Aston Martin Extended Service Contract

You may purchase an Aston Martin Extended Service Contract (ESC) which shall protect your vehicle for an extended period after the expiry of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The ESC provides:

- a) Protection against covered repair costs<sup>1</sup>.
- b) Aston Martin Emergency Assistance roadside support.
- c) Zero deductible, which means that you will not pay for covered repairs in the case of a legitimate claim.
- d) 12 or 24 months coverage across the USA and Canada.

Aston Martin offers various ESC products of varying levels of cover dependent upon the age and mileage of the vehicle. All vehicles must pass an Aston Martin multi-point inspection prior to the registration of an ESC on a vehicle.

Please note that the ESC Terms and Conditions shall apply. For a full list of the ESC Terms and Conditions, or if you would like to arrange such cover, talk to your nearest participating Aston Martin Dealer.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Wear items, neglect, force majeure and damage caused by outside influence are excluded, and shall be left to the sole discretion of Aston Martin.

| Owner Details                                                           | Vehicle Details         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:                                                                   | Registration Plate No.: | If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any un-expired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.<br><br>The new owner should complete a ‘tear off’ sheet (next page) and send the new details to:<br><br>Aston Martin Warranty Department<br>Aston Martin Lagonda Limited<br>Banbury Road,<br>Gaydon,<br>Warwick,<br>CV35 0DB,<br>England |
| Address:                                                                | VIN No.:                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| :                                                                       | Engine No.:             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| :                                                                       | Warranty Start Date:    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| :                                                                       |                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Zip Code:                                                               |                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <div><div>Signature:</div><div>Date:</div><div>Dealer Stamp</div></div> |                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**Owner Warranty Transfer (3)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (2)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (1)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

**Owner Warranty Transfer (6)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (5)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (4)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Alphabetical Index

## A

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Accessory Power Sockets .....   | 3.24 |
| Adaptive Damping .....          | 5.14 |
| Airbags .....                   | 3.12 |
| Front Passenger Sensing .....   | 3.15 |
| Alarm .....                     | 2.10 |
| Movement Sensor .....           | 2.11 |
| Reduced Guard .....             | 2.11 |
| Tilt Sensor .....               | 2.11 |
| Ambient Temperature .....       | 4.17 |
| Anti Corrosion Inspection ..... | A.9  |
| Anti-Lock Braking System .....  | 5.10 |
| Approach Light .....            | 2.10 |
| Ashtray and Cigar Lighter ..... | 3.25 |
| Aston Martin Assistance .....   | B.1  |
| Aston Martin Warranty .....     | C.1  |
| Audio .....                     | 7.1  |
| Battery Protection Mode .....   | 7.5  |
| Essentials .....                | 7.2  |
| Satellite Radio Functions ..... | 7.9  |
| Automatic Lock .....            | 2.9  |

|                              |       |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Automatic Transmission ..... | 5.5   |
| Fault Conditions .....       | 5.8   |
| Parklock Override .....      | 11.21 |
| Sport Mode .....             | 5.8   |
| Touchtronic Mode .....       | 5.7   |

## B

|                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Battery .....                   |       |
| Maintenance .....               | 11.26 |
| Protection Mode .....           | 7.5   |
| Battery Charge .....            | 11.26 |
| Battery Conditioner .....       | 11.26 |
| Battery Disconnect Switch ..... | 11.22 |
| Battery Disposal .....          | 11.26 |
| Battery Protection Mode .....   | 11.27 |
| Bonnet Release .....            | 11.7  |
| Boot Lamps .....                | 11.34 |
| Boot Lid .....                  | 2.7   |
| Boot Storage .....              | 3.21  |
| Brake Pad Bedding-in .....      | 11.11 |
| Brakes .....                    |       |
| Anti-Lock Braking System .....  | 5.10  |

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| Park Brake ..... | 5.11 |
|------------------|------|

## C

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Cabin Storage .....                   | 3.23  |
| Catalytic Converters .....            | 5.16  |
| Child Locks .....                     | 2.7   |
| Child Safety .....                    | 3.14  |
| Child Seats .....                     | 3.20  |
| Climate Control .....                 |       |
| Automatic Operation .....             | 6.5   |
| Controls .....                        | 6.2   |
| Manual Operation .....                | 6.6   |
| Operating Tips .....                  | 6.2   |
| Component Location .....              | 1.3   |
| Condensation, Headlamp Units .....    | 11.32 |
| Controls .....                        |       |
| Centre .....                          | 4.8   |
| Information and Warning Symbols ..... | 4.4   |
| Instrument Cluster .....              | 4.3   |
| Stalk .....                           | 4.12  |
| Controls Overview .....               | 4.2   |
| Cruise Control .....                  | 4.16  |

|                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| <b>D</b>                        |       |
| Dangerous Substances .....      | 11.4  |
| Deadlocking .....               | 2.9   |
| Defrosting and Demisting        |       |
| Automatic .....                 | 6.6   |
| Manual .....                    | 6.6   |
| Driving Techniques .....        | 5.2   |
| Dynamic Stability Control ..... | 5.13  |
| <b>E</b>                        |       |
| Electric Windows .....          | 3.25  |
| Emergency Items .....           | 11.5  |
| Emission Warranty .....         | 11.2  |
| Emotion Control Unit .....      | 2.2   |
| External Lamps .....            | 11.33 |
| <b>F</b>                        |       |
| Fluid Levels .....              | 11.8  |
| Footbrake .....                 | 5.9   |
| Front Passenger Sensing .....   | 3.15  |
| Front Seat Reset .....          | 11.35 |
| Fuel                            |       |
| Catalytic Converters .....      | 5.16  |
| Fuel Filling .....              | 5.15  |

|                                    |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| Fuse Boxes .....                   | 11.29 |
| <b>G</b>                           |       |
| Garage Door Opener .....           | 2.13  |
| Garage Door Opener (Option)        |       |
| Operation .....                    | 2.14  |
| Programming .....                  | 2.14  |
| Reprogramming .....                | 2.15  |
| Rolling Code Synchronisation ..... | 2.15  |
| <b>H</b>                           |       |
| Hands-Free Phone .....             | 9.1   |
| Connecting a Phone .....           | 9.4   |
| Removing a Phone .....             | 9.7   |
| Using a Phone .....                | 9.8   |
| Headlamp .....                     | 11.32 |
| Headlamp Alignment .....           | 11.32 |
| Headlamp Condensation .....        | 11.32 |
| Homesafe .....                     | 2.10  |
| <b>I</b>                           |       |
| Ignition Control .....             | 4.10  |
| Interior Mirrors .....             | 3.5   |
| Internal Lamps .....               | 11.34 |

|                                         |            |
|-----------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>J</b>                                |            |
| Jump Start From Another Vehicle .....   | 11.23      |
| <b>L</b>                                |            |
| Lamps .....                             | 4.14       |
| Boot .....                              | 11.34      |
| External .....                          | 11.33      |
| Headlamp .....                          | 11.32      |
| Internal .....                          | 11.34      |
| Locking the Vehicle .....               | 2.5        |
| Low Outside Temperature Warning .....   | 4.7        |
| <b>M</b>                                |            |
| Maintenance .....                       | 11.1, 11.5 |
| Vehicle Jacking .....                   | 11.3       |
| Maintenance Items                       |            |
| Battery Conditioner .....               | 11.6       |
| Tool Kit .....                          | 11.6       |
| Master Lamp .....                       | 4.13       |
| Master Vehicle Lock .....               | 2.6        |
| Memory Seats .....                      | 3.4        |
| Mirrors                                 |            |
| Auto Fold Function (Door Mirrors) ..... | 3.6        |
| Door .....                              | 3.6        |

|                                                      |      |                                    |       |                                      |            |
|------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|------------|
| Interior .....                                       | 3.5  | Navigation Map .....               | 10.10 | Transmission .....                   | 12.3       |
| Power Fold Function (Door Mirrors) .....             | 3.7  | Navigation System ON and OFF ..... | 10.5  | Tyres .....                          | 12.5       |
| Reverse Dip Function (Door Mirrors) .....            | 3.7  | Seat Adjustment .....              | 3.2   | Vehicle Type .....                   | 12.6       |
| <b>P</b>                                             |      | Seat Belts .....                   | 3.8   | Wheels .....                         | 12.4       |
| Park Brake .....                                     | 5.11 | Care and Maintenance .....         | 11.38 | Starting the Engine .....            | 5.3        |
| Parking Assist .....                                 | 5.18 | Child .....                        | 3.11  | Steering Wheel .....                 | 3.5        |
| Rear Only .....                                      | 5.21 | Seats                              |       | Storage .....                        | 3.21, 3.23 |
| Passive Anti-Theft System .....                      | 2.12 | Memory Function .....              | 3.4   | Supplemental Restraints System ..... | 3.12       |
| Personalisation                                      |      | Temperature Controlled .....       | 3.3   | <b>T</b>                             |            |
| Security .....                                       | 2.16 | Security                           |       | Temperature Controlled Seats .....   | 3.3        |
| <b>R</b>                                             |      | Personalisation .....              | 2.16  | Track Days .....                     | 5.2        |
| Reading Lamps .....                                  | 3.27 | Service Record .....               | A.7   | Traction Control .....               | 5.14       |
| Rear Seat Entertainment .....                        | 8.1  | Servicing .....                    | A.4   | Trip .....                           | 4.14       |
| Replacement of Airbag Units Record .....             | A.11 | Servicing Precautions .....        | 11.3  | Tyre .....                           | 4.18       |
| Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners Record ..... | A.11 | Specifications .....               | 12.1  | Tyre Sealant Kit .....               | 11.19      |
| Restraints System .....                              | 3.8  | Brakes .....                       | 12.4  | Tyres .....                          | 11.12      |
| Determining if the System is Operational .....       | 3.8  | Bulbs .....                        | 12.6  | Winter .....                         | 11.19      |
| Reversing Camera .....                               | 5.17 | Electrics .....                    | 12.3  | <b>U</b>                             |            |
| <b>S</b>                                             |      | Engine .....                       | 12.2  | Unlocking the Vehicle .....          | 2.4        |
| Safety Defects - Reporting .....                     | 1.4  | Exterior Dimensions .....          | 12.7  | <b>V</b>                             |            |
| Satellite Navigation .....                           | 10.1 | Fluids and Capacities .....        | 12.8  | Vehicle Battery .....                | 11.25      |
| Find a Location .....                                | 10.7 | Interior Dimensions .....          | 12.7  | Vehicle Cleaning .....               | 11.36      |
|                                                      |      | Steering .....                     | 12.3  |                                      |            |
|                                                      |      | Suspension .....                   | 12.4  |                                      |            |

Vehicle Horn .....4.13

Vehicle Identification .....1.4

Vehicle Key .....2.2

Vehicle Recovery .....11.21

Vehicle Storage .....11.39

**W**

Wheel Nut Torque .....12.5

Window Reset .....11.35

Windscreen Blade Replacement .....11.11

Wipers

    Wiper .....4.12



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN